

# Heaven on Earth

## A Treatise on Christian Assurance

Thomas Brooks

### I. Introduction

#### A. Epistle Directory. To the Generals of the Fleets of the Commonwealth.

1. Two sorts of Goods.
  - a. Goods of the throne, as God, Christ, grace, assurance, etc.
    - 1.) *"It was an excellent saying of Lewis, emperor of Germany, 'Such goods are worth getting and owning, as will not sink nor wash away, if a shipwreck happens; but will wade and swim out with us.'"*
    - 2.) *"In all storms, tempests, and shipwrecks, they will abide with the soul, they will walk and lie down with the soul, yes, they will go to the grave, to heaven, with the soul: they will in the greatest storms be an ark to the soul."*
  - b. Goods of the footstool, as honor, riches, etc.
2. Reasons for study.
  - a. You have honored the Almighty, by helping him against the high and mighty; and he has honored you, by owning of you, by standing by you, by acting for you, and by making of you prosperous and victorious over a near enemy, a powerful enemy, an enraged enemy, a resolved enemy, a subtle enemy, a prepared enemy, a lofty enemy;
    - 1.) ***[1 Samuel 2:30]- Wherefore the LORD God of Israel saith, I said indeed that thy house, and the house of thy father, should walk before me for ever: but now the LORD saith, Be it far from me; for them that honour me I will honour, and they that despise me shall be lightly esteemed.***
  - b. That cordial love and friendship which I have found from you has stamped in my affections a very high valuation of you.
    - 1.) *"Faithful friends are an invaluable treasure, and the rarity of them does much enhance their worth."*
  - c. Its exceeding usefulness and suitableness to your conditions.
  - d. In this treatise, as in a glass, you may see these ten special things clearly and fully opened and manifested.
    - 1.) What knowledge that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 2.) What faith that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 3.) What repentance that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 4.) What obedience that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 5.) What love that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 6.) What prayer that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 7.) What perseverance that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 8.) What hope that is, which accompanies salvation.
    - 9.) The difference there is between true assurance, and that which is counterfeit.
    - 10.) The wide difference there is between the witness of the Spirit, and the hissing of the old serpent.
3. Counsels.
  - a. Get and keep communion with God.
    - 1.) ***[Proverbs 28:1]- The wicked flee when no man pursueth: but the righteous are bold as a lion.***

- 2.) *[Judges 16:20-21]- And she said, The Philistines be upon thee, Samson. And he awoke out of his sleep, and said, I will go out as at other times before, and shake myself. And he wist not that the LORD was departed from him. But the Philistines took him, and put out his eyes, and brought him down to Gaza, and bound him with fetters of brass; and he did grind in the prison house.*
- b. Make a speedy and a thorough improvement of all opportunities of grace and mercy.
- 1.) *[Hebrews 3:7-8]- Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith, To day if ye will hear his voice, Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness:*
  - 2.) *[1 Chronicles 12:32]- And of the children of Issachar, which were men that had understanding of the times, to know what Israel ought to do; the heads of them were two hundred; and all their brethren were at their commandment.*
  - 3.) *"It was Titus, a pagan emperor, who uttered this memorable and praiseworthy apophthegm, 'My friends, I have lost a day!' when he had spent it in company, without doing good."*
  - 4.) *"The Egyptians drew the picture of time with three heads, to represent the three differences. The first of a greedy wolf, gaping for time past, because it has ravenously devoured even the memory of so many things past recalling; the second of a crowned lion, roaring for time present, because it has the principality of all action, for which it calls aloud. The third of a deceitful dog, fawning for time to come, because it feeds fond men with many flattering hopes, to their own undoing."*
  - 5.) *"One Hermanus, a great courtier in the kingdom of Bohemia, being at point of death, did most lamentably cry out "that he had spent more time in the palace than in the temple, and that he had added to the riotousness and vices of the court, which he should have sought to have reformed," and so died, to the horror of those who were about him."*
  - 6.) *[Hebrews 6:9]- But, beloved, we are persuaded better things of you, and things that accompany salvation, though we thus speak.*
- c. Take no truths upon trust, but all upon trial.
- 1.) *[1 John 4:1]- Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world.*
  - 2.) *[Acts 17:10-11]- And the brethren immediately sent away Paul and Silas by night unto Berea: who coming thither went into the synagogue of the Jews. These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether those things were so.*
  - 3.) *[Isaiah 7:15]- Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good.*
- d. Be exemplary to those among whom you live. Precepts may instruct, but examples persuade.
- 1.) *[2 Samuel 23:3]- The God of Israel said, the Rock of Israel spake to me, He that ruleth over men must be just, ruling in the fear of God.*
  - 2.) *[John 7:48]- Have any of the rulers or of the Pharisees believed on him?*
- e. Lay out yourselves impartially for the common good of all who have interest in you, or dependence upon you.
- 1.) *[Galatians 6:9]- And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.*
  - 2.) *[Ezekiel 21:25-27]- And thou, profane wicked prince of Israel, whose day is come, when iniquity shall have an end, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Remove the diadem, and take off the crown: this shall not be the same: exalt him that is low, and abase him*

*that is high. I will overturn, overturn, overturn, it: and it shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him.*

- 3.) *[Jeremiah 45:4]- Thus shalt thou say unto him, The LORD saith thus; Behold, that which I have built will I break down, and that which I have planted I will pluck up, even this whole land.*

- f. Make it more and more your chief work to make plentiful provisions for the eternal welfare of your souls.

B. Epistle to the Saints.

1. You are those worthies.

- a. *[Hebrews 11:38]- (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the earth.*
- b. *[Genesis 32:28]- And he said, Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed.*
- c. *[Psalm 16:3]- But to the saints that are in the earth, and to the excellent, in whom is all my delight.*
- d. *[Isaiah 4:5]- And the LORD will create upon every dwelling place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night: for upon all the glory shall be a defence.*
- e. *[Revelation 17:14]- These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.*
- f. *[Revelation 19:8,14]- And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.*
- g. *[Song of Solomon 8:6]- Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love is strong as death; jealousy is cruel as the grave: the coals thereof are coals of fire, which hath a most vehement flame.*
- h. *[Isaiah 49:16]- Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.*
- i. *[Exodus 28:29]- And Aaron shall bear the names of the children of Israel in the breastplate of judgment upon his heart, when he goeth in unto the holy place, for a memorial before the LORD continually.*
- j. *[2 Corinthians 2:8]- Wherefore I beseech you that ye would confirm your love toward him.*
- k. *[1 John 2:27]- But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.*
- l. *[1 Corinthians 1:10,12,15-16]- Now I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment. Now this I say, that every one of you saith, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ. Lest any should say that I had baptized in mine own name. And I baptized also the household of Stephanas: besides, I know not whether I baptized any other.*

2. Reasons for discourse.

- a. To answer the desires, and gratify the earnest and pious requests of several precious souls.
- b. The good acceptance, which my labors of the like nature have found among those who fear the Lord.
  - 1.) *[Philippians 1:9-11]- And this I pray, that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and in all judgment; That ye may approve things that are excellent;*

*that ye may be sincere and without offence till the day of Christ. Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.*

- c. It is exceeding useful to the saints at all times, but especially in such changing times.
- d. The little well-grounded assurance, which is to be found among most Christians.
  - 1.) *[Isaiah 21:11-12]- The burden of Dumah. He calleth to me out of Seir, Watchman, what of the night? Watchman, what of the night? The watchman said, The morning cometh, and also the night: if ye will enquire, enquire ye: return, come.*
  - 2.) *[Joel 3:16]- The LORD also shall roar out of Zion, and utter his voice from Jerusalem; and the heavens and the earth shall shake: but the LORD will be the hope of his people, and the strength of the children of Israel.*
  - 3.) *[Haggai 2:6]- For thus saith the LORD of hosts; Yet once, it is a little while, and I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land;*
  - 4.) *[Isaiah 23:9]- The LORD of hosts hath purposed it, to stain the pride of all glory, and to bring into contempt all the honourable of the earth.*
  - 5.) *[Isaiah 58:2-3]- Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their God: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to God. Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours.*
  - 6.) *[Jeremiah 45:4-5]- Thus shalt thou say unto him, The LORD saith thus; Behold, that which I have built will I break down, and that which I have planted I will pluck up, even this whole land. And seekest thou great things for thyself? seek them not: for, behold, I will bring evil upon all flesh, saith the LORD: but thy life will I give unto thee for a prey in all places whither thou goest.*
  - 7.) *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
  - 8.) *[Revelation 3:4]- Thou hast a few names even in Sardis which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with me in white: for they are worthy.*
  - 9.) *[Revelation 14:4]- These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb.*
  - 10.) *[Psalm 23:3-4]- He restoreth my soul: he leadeth me in the paths of righteousness for his name's sake. Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me.*
  - 11.) *[Revelation 6:12]- And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood;*
- e. Remembering that my life is but a vanishing vapor, and that the time of my sojourn in this world will be but short.
  - 1.) *[James 4:14]- Whereas ye know not what shall be on the morrow. For what is your life? It is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 39:12]- Hear my prayer, O LORD, and give ear unto my cry; hold not thy peace at my tears: for I am a stranger with thee, and a sojourner, as all my fathers were.*
- f. To testify my cordial love and affection to all the true lovers of Christ.
  - 1.) *[Philippians 4:21]- Salute every saint in Christ Jesus. The brethren which are with me greet you.*
  - 2.) *[Colossians 1:4]- Since we heard of your faith in Christ Jesus, and of the love which ye have to all the saints,*

- 3.) *[2 Thessalonians 1:3]- We are bound to thank God always for you, brethren, as it is meet, because that your faith groweth exceedingly, and the charity of every one of you all toward each other aboundeth;*
- 4.) *"Pancirolos tells us, that the most precious pearl the Romans had, was called 'union'."*

g. To fence and fortify the souls of real, serious Christians against those brainsick notions

#### C. Preface.

1. In a state of true grace.
  - a. *[Psalm 144:15]- Happy is that people, that is in such a case: yea, happy is that people, whose God is the LORD.*
  - b. *[Malachi 3:17]- And they shall be mine, saith the LORD of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.*
  - c. *[Romans 8:16-17]- The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.*
  - d. *[Deuteronomy 33:26-27]- There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun, who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them.*
  - e. *[1 Corinthians 3:22-23]- Whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the world, or life, or death, or things present, or things to come; all are your's; And ye are Christ's; and Christ is God's.*
2. To have assurance.
  - a. *"...a reflex act of a gracious soul, whereby he clearly and evidently sees himself in a gracious, blessed, and happy state; it is a sensible feeling, and an experimental discerning of a man's being in a state of grace, and of his having a right to an eternal crown of glory; and this rises from the seeing in himself the special, peculiar, and distinguishing graces of Christ, in the light of the Spirit of Christ, or from the testimony and report of the Spirit of God,"*
  - b. *[Romans 8:16-17]- The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.*
  - c. *"It is one thing for me to have grace, it is another thing for me to see my grace; it is one thing for me to believe, and another thing for me to believe that I do believe; it is one thing for me to have faith, and another thing for me to know that I have faith. Now assurance flows from a clear, certain, evident knowledge that I have grace, and that I do believe, etc."*
  - d. *"Assurance is not of the essence of a Christian. It is required to the well-being, to the comfortable and joyful being of a Christian; but it is not required to the being of a Christian."*
  - e. *[Ephesians 1:13]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,*
  - f. *[1 John 5:13]- These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.*
  - g. *[Galatians 4:6]- And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.*

II. Believers may in this life attain unto a well-grounded assurance of their everlasting happiness and blessedness.

- A. Ten arguments.
1. The ground on which the apostle Paul builds his assurance.
    - a. *[Romans 8:32-34]- He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things? Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth. Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.*
    - b. That believers may in this life attain unto a well-grounded assurance of their everlasting happiness and blessedness.
    - c. *[2 Kings 20:3]- I beseech thee, O LORD, remember now how I have walked before thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in thy sight. And Hezekiah wept sore.*
  2. It is the very scope and end of the Scripture to help believers to a well-grounded assurance of their everlasting happiness and blessedness.
    - a. *[1 John 5:13]- These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.*
    - b. *[Titus 1:2]-In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;*
    - c. *[Ephesians 2:6]- And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:*
    - d. Basis for the Scriptures incomparability.
      - 1.) Antiquity
      - 2.) Rarity.
      - 3.) Variety.
      - 4.) Brevity.
      - 5.) Perspicuity.
      - 6.) Harmony.
      - 7.) Verity.
      - 8.) *[Hebrews 6:18]- That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:*
  3. Other believers have in an ordinary way attained to a sweet assurance of their everlasting happiness and blessedness.
    - a. *[2 Corinthians 5:1-2]- For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven:*
    - b. *[Song of Solomon 2:16]- My beloved is mine, and I am his: he feedeth among the lilies.*
    - c. *[Ephesians 1:22-23]- And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.*
    - d. *[1 Corinthians 1:30]- But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:*
    - e. *[1 Corinthians 6:20]- For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.*
    - f. *[Psalm 110:3]- Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power, in the beauties of holiness from the womb of the morning: thou hast the dew of thy youth.*
    - g. *[John 10:29]- My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.*
    - h. *[John 15:16]- Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and that your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you.*

- i. *[Ezekiel 16:8]- Now when I passed by thee, and looked upon thee, behold, thy time was the time of love; and I spread my skirt over thee, and covered thy nakedness: yea, I swear unto thee, and entered into a covenant with thee, saith the Lord GOD, and thou becamest mine.*
  - j. *[Hosea 2:19-20]- And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies. I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the LORD.*
  - k. *[Isaiah 63:16]- Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O LORD, art our father, our redeemer; thy name is from everlasting.*
  - l. *[Psalm 119:94]- I am thine, save me: for I have sought thy precepts.*
  - m. *[Job 19:25]- For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth:*
  - n. *[John 20:28]- And Thomas answered and said unto him, My LORD and my God.*
  - o. *[Romans 8:38-39]- For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.*
  - p. *[2 Timothy 4:7-8]- I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith: Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
4. God has by promise engaged himself to assure his people of their happiness and blessedness.
    - a. *[Psalm 84:11]- For the LORD God is a sun and shield: the LORD will give grace and glory: no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly.*
    - b. *[Ezekiel 34:30-31]- Thus shall they know that I the LORD their God am with them, and that they, even the house of Israel, are my people, saith the Lord GOD. And ye my flock, the flock of my pasture, are men, and I am your God, saith the Lord GOD.*
    - c. *[John 14:21,23]- He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.*
    - d. *[2 Corinthians 1:20]- For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.*
    - e. *[Isaiah 64:4]- For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him.*
    - f. *[1 Corinthians 2:9]- But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.*
    - g. *[Psalm 21:3]- For thou preventest him with the blessings of goodness: thou settest a crown of pure gold on his head.*
    - h. *[Isaiah 65:24]- And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear.*
  5. There is in all the saints the springs of assurance, and therefore they may attain to assurance.
    - a. Precious FAITH is one spring of assurance, and this is in all the saints, though in different degrees.
      - 1.) *[2 Peter 1:1]- Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ:*
      - 2.) Looks upon God

- a.) *[Psalm 48:14]- For this God is our God for ever and ever: he will be our guide even unto death.*
- 3.) Looks upon Christ.  
a.) *[Song of Solomon 7:10]- I am my beloved's, and his desire is toward me.*
- 4.) Looks upon an immortal crown.  
a.) *[2 Timothy 4:8]- Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
- 5.) Looks upon the **Righteousness of Christ**. *"This righteousness is mine to cover me."*
- 6.) Looks upon the **Mercy of Christ**. *"This mercy is mine to pardon me."*
- 7.) Looks upon the **Power of Christ**. *"This power is mine to support me."*
- 8.) Looks upon the **Wisdom of Christ**. *"This wisdom is mine to direct me."*
- 9.) Looks upon the **Blood of Christ**. *"This blood is mine to save me,"*
- b. HOPE is another spring of assurance.
- 1.) *[Colossians 1:27]- To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:*
  - 2.) *[Hebrews 6:19]- Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;*
  - 3.) *[Job 8:13-14]- So are the paths of all that forget God; and the hypocrite's hope shall perish: Whose hope shall be cut off, and whose trust shall be a spider's web.*
  - 4.) *"When Alexander went upon a hopeful expedition, he gave away his gold; and when he was asked what he kept for himself, he answered, 'the hope of greater and better things.' So a Christian will part with anything rather than with his hope; he knows that hope will keep the heart both from aching and breaking, from fainting and sinking; he knows that hope is a beam of God, a spark of glory, and that nothing shall extinguish it until the soul is filled with glory."*
  - 5.) *[Hebrews 10:37]- For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.*
- c. A GOOD CONSCIENCE is another spring of assurance:
- 1.) *[2 Corinthians 1:12]- For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.*
  - 2.) *[1 John 3:21]- Beloved, if our heart condemn us not, then have we confidence toward God.*
  - 3.) *[Matthew 8:19]- And a certain scribe came, and said unto him, Master, I will follow thee whithersoever thou goest.*
  - 4.) *"A good conscience will look through the blackest clouds, and see a smiling God."*
  - 5.) *[Matthew 9:2]- And, behold, they brought to him a man sick of the palsy, lying on a bed: and Jesus seeing their faith said unto the sick of the palsy; Son, be of good cheer; thy sins be forgiven thee.*
- d. Real LOVE TO THE SAINTS is another spring of assurance, and this spring is a never-failing spring.
- 1.) *[1 John 3:14]- We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death.*



- 2.) *[John 4:14]- But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.*
  - 3.) *[Genesis 21:15-19]- And the water was spent in the bottle, and she cast the child under one of the shrubs. And she went, and sat her down over against him a good way off, as it were a bow shot: for she said, Let me not see the death of the child. And she sat over against him, and lift up her voice, and wept. And God heard the voice of the lad; and the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said unto her, What aileth thee, Hagar? fear not; for God hath heard the voice of the lad where he is. Arise, lift up the lad, and hold him in thine hand; for I will make him a great nation. And God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water; and she went, and filled the bottle with water, and gave the lad drink.*
  - 4.) *[Galatians 5:22-23]- But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.*
  - 5.) *[Colossians 1:27]- To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:*
  - 6.) *[Song of Solomon 1:5]- I am black, but comely, O ye daughters of Jerusalem, as the tents of Kedar, as the curtains of Solomon.*
  - 7.) *[Song of Solomon 4:7]- Thou art all fair, my love; there is no spot in thee.*
  - 8.) *[Psalm 45:11]- So shall the king greatly desire thy beauty: for he is thy Lord; and worship thou him.*
6. The Holy Spirit exhorts us "to give all diligence to make our calling and election sure".
- a. *[2 Peter 1:10]- Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall:*
    - 1.) Give diligence with all possible haste and speed;
    - 2.) Give diligence with all manner of seriousness and intention in doing.
  - b. *[Psalm 127:1-2]- Except the LORD build the house, they labour in vain that build it: except the LORD keep the city, the watchman waketh but in vain. It is vain for you to rise up early, to sit up late, to eat the bread of sorrows: for so he giveth his beloved sleep.*
  - c. *[Luke 5:6]- And when they had this done, they inclosed a great multitude of fishes: and their net brake.*
  - d. *[Proverbs 14:23]- In all labour there is profit: but the talk of the lips tendeth only to penury.*
  - e. *[Hebrews 6:11-12]- And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end: That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.*
7. The Lord has, in much mercy and love, propounded in his word the ways and means whereby believers may obtain a well-grounded assurance of their everlasting happiness and blessedness.
- a. *[2 Peter 1:13]- Yea, I think it meet, as long as I am in this tabernacle, to stir you up by putting you in remembrance;*
  - b. *[1 Corinthians 11:28]- But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup.*
  - c. *[2 Corinthians 13:5]- Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?*
  - d. *"By a serious examination of a man's own estate, he may know whether he has faith or not, whether he is Christ's spouse or the devil's strumpet, whether there be a work of grace upon his heart or not."*
  - e. *[Exodus 15:11]- Who is like unto thee, O LORD, among the gods? who is like thee, glorious in holiness, fearful in praises, doing wonders?*

- f. *[Job 38:6,18,21,33]- Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? or who laid the corner stone thereof; Hast thou perceived the breadth of the earth? declare if thou knowest it all. Knowest thou it, because thou wast then born? or because the number of thy days is great? Knowest thou the ordinances of heaven? canst thou set the dominion thereof in the earth?*
8. It was the principal end of Christ's institution of the sacrament of the Supper that he might assure them of his love.
    - a. *[Matthew 26:27-28]- And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it; For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.*
    - b. *[Daniel 6:8]- Now, O king, establish the decree, and sign the writing, that it be not changed, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not.*
    - c. *[Matthew 27:66]- So they went, and made the sepulchre sure, sealing the stone, and setting a watch.*
    - d. *[2 Timothy 4:8]- Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
    - e. *[Colossians 3:11]- Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.*
    - f. *[Song of Solomon 7:10]- I am my beloved's, and his desire is toward me.*
    - g. *[Revelation 2:17]- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.*
    - h. *[Matthew 9:2]- And, behold, they brought to him a man sick of the palsy, lying on a bed: and Jesus seeing their faith said unto the sick of the palsy; Son, be of good cheer; thy sins be forgiven thee.*
  9. Those scriptures that do expressly require saints to be abundant and constant in rejoicing and in praising of God, to have always harps in their hands, and hallelujahs in their mouths, do clearly evidence that believers may attain to a well-grounded assurance in this life.
    - a. *[Psalm 137:2]- We hanged our harps upon the willows in the midst thereof.*
    - b. *[Matthew 25:41]- Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels:*
    - c. *[1 Thessalonians 5:16]- Rejoice evermore.*
    - d. *[Psalm 32:11]- Be glad in the LORD, and rejoice, ye righteous: and shout for joy, all ye that are upright in heart.*
    - e. *[Psalm 33:1]- Rejoice in the LORD, O ye righteous: for praise is comely for the upright.*
    - f. *"Christians, are not your mercies greater than your miseries? Yes! Are your greatest sufferings comparable to the least spark of grace or beam of glory revealed in you or to you? No! Will not one hour's being in the bosom of Christ recompense you for all your trouble and travail? Yes. Why, then, do you spend more time in sighing than in rejoicing; and why do you, by your not rejoicing, sadden those precious hearts that God would not have saddened, and gladden those graceless hearts that God would not have gladdened?"*
    - g. *[Nehemiah 8:10]- Then he said unto them, Go your way, eat the fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions unto them for whom nothing is prepared: for this day is holy unto our LORD: neither be ye sorry; for the joy of the LORD is your strength.*
  10. God would never have made such a broad difference in the Scripture if it were impossible for men to know which of these two estates they are in.
    - a. *[Genesis 3:15]- And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.*

- b. *[Ezekiel 18:19]- Yet say ye, Why? doth not the son bear the iniquity of the father? When the son hath done that which is lawful and right, and hath kept all my statutes, and hath done them, he shall surely live.*
- c. *[Matthew 25:1]- Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom.*
- d. *[Matthew 3:12]- Whose fan is in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor, and gather his wheat into the garner; but he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire.*
- e. *[2 Corinthians 6:14]- Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness?*
- f. *[Matthew 13:1]- The same day went Jesus out of the house, and sat by the sea side.*
- g. *[John 8:44]- Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.*
- h. *[Isaiah 63:16]- Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O LORD, art our father, our redeemer; thy name is from everlasting.*
- i. *[Romans 8:15]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.*
- j. *[Jeremiah 3:4]- Wilt thou not from this time cry unto me, My father, thou art the guide of my youth?*

B. Use1: This precious truth thus proved, looks sourly upon all those who affirm that believers cannot in this life attain unto a certain well-grounded assurance of their everlasting happiness and blessedness.

- 1. Arminians are not ashamed to say, that God may crown a man one hour, and uncrown him in the next; they blush not to say that a man may be happy and miserable, under love and under wrath, an heir of heaven and a firebrand of hell, a child of light and a child of darkness—and all in an hour.
  - a. *[Luke 15:17]- And when he came to himself, he said, How many hired servants of my father's have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger!*
  - b. *[Revelation 3:18]- I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*
  - c. *[Ephesians 3:8]- Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;*
  - d. *[John 20:18]- Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the LORD, and that he had spoken these things unto her.*
  - e. *[Job 19:25]- For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth:*
  - f. *[Song of Solomon 7:10]- I am my beloved's, and his desire is toward me.*
- 2. Remember this is your happiness and blessedness.
  - a. *[John 10:29]- My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.*
  - b. *[1 Peter 1:5]- Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.*
  - c. *[Isaiah 54:10]- For the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed; but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the LORD that hath mercy on thee.*
  - d. *[Hebrews 7:25]- Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.*

- e. *[Deuteronomy 33:26-27]- There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun, who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them.*
3. "The whole Scripture, both principally aim at this thing, that we should not doubt—but that we should hope, that we should trust, that we should believe, that God is a merciful, a bountiful, a gracious, and a patient God to his people." - Luther
- III. Several weighty propositions concerning assurance.
- A. God denies assurance for a time to his dearest and choicest ones, and that upon many considerable grounds.
    1. For the exercise of their grace.
      - a. *[Genesis 14:21]- And the king of Sodom said unto Abram, Give me the persons, and take the goods to thyself.*
    2. That He may keep them in the exercise of those religious duties that are most costly and contrary to flesh and blood.
      - a. *[Lamentations 1:16]- For these things I weep; mine eye, mine eye runneth down with water, because the comforter that should relieve my soul is far from me: my children are desolate, because the enemy prevailed.*
      - b. *[Lamentations 3:2-3]- He hath led me, and brought me into darkness, but not into light. Surely against me is he turned; he turneth his hand against me all the day.*
      - c. *[Lamentations 3:17]- And thou hast removed my soul far off from peace: I forgot prosperity.*
      - d. *[Lamentations 3:40]- Let us search and try our ways, and turn again to the LORD.*
    - e. Why will God put his children upon those duties of religion which are most costly and contrary to flesh and blood?
      - 1.) That his strength and power may appear in their weakness.
        - a.) *[2 Corinthians 12:7-9]- And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me. And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may rest upon me.*
  - 2.) To discover not only the *reality*—but also the *strength* of their graces.
    - a.) A *little* grace will put a man upon those religious duties that are easy and pleasing to flesh and blood, and rather profitable and pleasurable; but it must be *strength* of grace that puts man upon those services that are costly and cross to the *old man*.
  - 3.) That they may be more fully and eminently conformable to Christ their head, who, from first to last, who, even from the cradle to the cross.
  - 4.) Because in the performance of such duties they do in a more singular way bear up the name and credit, the honour and glory of God, Christ, and the gospel in the world.
    - a.) The very world will cry out, "Ah, these are Christians indeed!"
  - 5.) Because the more they are in the exercise of such duties, the greater at last will be their reward.
    - a.) *[Hebrews 11:7]- By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith.*

- 6.) That Satan's plots and designs may be the better prevented, and the wicked world more justly condemned, who do not only despise the hardest duties of religion—but also neglect the easiest.
  - a.) *[Matthew 25:4-6]- But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps. While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.*
3. That they may be the more clearly and fully convinced of that exceeding sinfulness and bitterness that is in sin,
  - a. *[Jeremiah 2:19]- Thine own wickedness shall correct thee, and thy backslidings shall reprove thee: know therefore and see that it is an evil thing and bitter, that thou hast forsaken the LORD thy God, and that my fear is not in thee, saith the Lord GOD of hosts.*
  - b. *[Psalm 4:7]- Thou hast put gladness in my heart, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased.*
  - c. *[Psalm 63:3-4]- Because thy lovingkindness is better than life, my lips shall praise thee. Thus will I bless thee while I live: I will lift up my hands in thy name.*
  - d. *[Hebrews 3:13]- But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.*
  - e. *[Luke 23:21]- But they cried, saying, Crucify him, crucify him.*
4. They seek assurance more for themselves—than they do for his honor and glory;
  - a. *"Many Christians are like the bee which flies into the field to seek honey to eat—but brings it not into the master's hive. So they seek for assurance, that they may feed upon that sweet honeycomb, more than to fill their Lord and master's hive with thanks and praise."*
  - b. *"It was a notable saying of Nazianzen, "Let me be cast into the sea, let me lose my peace—rather than the name of Christ should suffer;" so tender was he of the honour and glory of Christ."*
5. That when they have it, they may the more highly prize it, the more carefully keep it, the more wisely improve it, and the more affectionately and effectually bless God for it.
  - a. *[Jonah 2:2]- And said, I cried by reason of mine affliction unto the LORD, and he heard me; out of the belly of hell cried I, and thou heardest my voice.*
  - b. *[Psalm 139:8]- If I ascend up into heaven, thou art there: if I make my bed in hell, behold, thou art there.*
  - c. By the lack of *temporals*—God teaches his people the better to prize them, and improve them when they enjoy them.
  - d. By the lack of *spirituals*—God teaches his people the better to prize them, and improve them when they enjoy them.
  - e. *[Numbers 14:33-34]- And your children shall wander in the wilderness forty years, and bear your whoredoms, until your carcases be wasted in the wilderness. After the number of the days in which ye searched the land, even forty days, each day for a year, shall ye bear your iniquities, even forty years, and ye shall know my breach of promise.*
6. That they be kept humble and low in their own eyes.
  - a. *[Psalm 30:6]- And in my prosperity I said, I shall never be moved.*
  - b. *[Judges 5:28]- The mother of Sisera looked out at a window, and cried through the lattice, Why is his chariot so long in coming? why tarry the wheels of his chariots?*
7. That they may live clearly and fully upon Jesus Christ, that Jesus Christ may be seen to be all in all.
  - a. *[Hebrews 11:27]- By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.*

- b. *[Isaiah 60:19]- The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the LORD shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory.*
- c. *[Micah 7:7-9]- Therefore I will look unto the LORD; I will wait for the God of my salvation: my God will hear me. Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the LORD shall be a light unto me. I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness.*
- d. *[John 20:28-29]- And Thomas answered and said unto him, My LORD and my God. Jesus saith unto him, Thomas, because thou hast seen me, thou hast believed: blessed are they that have not seen, and yet have believed.*

B. The Scripture has many sweet significant WORDS to express that well-grounded assurance by, which believers may attain to in this life. Sometimes it is called a persuasion.

- 1. There is a natural persuasion: natural principles may persuade a man that there is a God, and that this God is a great God, a beauteous God, etc.—but this will not make a man happy;
- 2. There is a moral persuasion;
- 3. There is a traditional persuasion;
- 4. There is a divine persuasion, which flows from divine principles and causes.
  - a. *[Romans 8:38-39]- For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.*
  - b. *[John 14:21-24]- He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. Judas saith unto him, not Iscariot, Lord, how is it that thou wilt manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world? Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him. He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me.*
  - c. *[1 John 3:14,19,24]- We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death. And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him. And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.*
  - d. *[1 John 5:13,19]- These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God. And we know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness.*
- 5. Full assurance.
  - a. Full assurance of understanding.
    - 1.) *[Colossians 2.2]- That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;*
  - b. Full assurance of hope.
    - 1.) *[Hebrews 6:11,18-19]- And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end: That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us: Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;*

- c. Full assurance of faith.
    - 1.) *[Hebrews 10:22]- Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.*
  - d. *[Revelation 3:18]- I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*
  - e. *[Romans 8:16-17]- The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.*
  - f. *[1 Peter 2:2]- As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby:*
- C. A man may have true grace—who has no assurance of the love and favour of God, or of the remission of his sins and salvation of his soul.
- 1. *[Matthew 15:22,29]- And, behold, a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, Have mercy on me, O Lord, thou son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil. And Jesus departed from thence, and came nigh unto the sea of Galilee; and went up into a mountain, and sat down there.*
  - 2. *[Ephesians 1:13]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,*
  - 3. Stages of full assurance.
    - a. They heard the Word.
    - b. They believed the Word.
    - c. They were sealed; that is, fully assured of a heavenly inheritance, of a purchased possession.
    - d. *[1 John 5:13]- These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.*
    - e. *[Isaiah 50:10]- Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God.*
    - f. *[Micah 7:8-9]- Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the LORD shall be a light unto me. I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness.*
    - g. *[Isaiah 8:17]- And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.*
    - h. *[Isaiah 49:14-16]- But Zion said, The LORD hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me. Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee. Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.*
    - i. *[Isaiah 54:6-11]- For the LORD hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God. For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee. In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the LORD thy Redeemer. For this is as the waters of Noah unto me: for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee. For the mountains shall depart, and the*

*hills be removed; but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the LORD that hath mercy on thee. O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.*

- j. *[Acts 1:9]- And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.*
  - k. *[Judges 13:20]- For it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of the LORD ascended in the flame of the altar. And Manoah and his wife looked on it, and fell on their faces to the ground.*
4. Now a man may have grace, and yet lack assurance; and this may arise from these causes.
- a. From his caviling spirit, and from his siding with the old man against the new, with the flesh against the spirit, with corruption against grace.
    - 1.) *"Many heathens have been so loving and faithful one to another, that they would rather die, than they would bear false witness one against another. How dare you then, caviling souls, to bear false witness against your own souls, and the gracious work of the Lord upon them! If this is not the way to keep off assurance, and keep the soul in darkness, yes, in a hell—I know nothing."*
  - b. From the exceeding littleness and weakness of his grace.
    - 1.) *[Matt 14:30-31]- But when he saw the wind boisterous, he was afraid; and beginning to sink, he cried, saying, Lord, save me.*
    - 2.) *[Mark 9:24]- And immediately Jesus stretched forth his hand, and caught him, and said unto him, O thou of little faith, wherefore didst thou doubt?*
    - 3.) *"The babe in the cradle has as much propriety in the father as he who is grown up to ripe years, though he cannot make such improvement of it as the other. A child's hand may receive a pearl, as well as the hand of a giant. Just so, may a weak faith receive Christ—as well as a strong faith."*
    - 4.) *"Hierom observes upon the beatitudes, that there are many of the promises made to weak grace:"*
      - a.) *[Matt 5:3-6]- Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted. Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth. Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.*
  - c. From the resurrection of old sins.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 25:7]- Remember not the sins of my youth, nor my transgressions: according to thy mercy remember thou me for thy goodness' sake, O LORD.*
    - 2.) *[Job 13:26]- For thou writest bitter things against me, and makest me to possess the iniquities of my youth.*
    - 3.) *[Isaiah 43:25]- I, even I, am he that blotteth out thy transgressions for mine own sake, and will not remember thy sins.*
    - 4.) *[Jeremiah 31:34]- And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the LORD: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the LORD: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.*
  - d. From his falling short of that maturity which the word requires, and that other saints have attained to.
    - 1.) *"Suetonius reports of Julius Caesar, that seeing Alexander's statue, he fetched a deep sigh, because he at that age had done so little. Just so, many precious souls sit down sighing and weeping—that they have lived so long, and done so little for God, and for their own internal and eternal good. This wounds and sinks their spirits, that they are so unlike to those in grace, whom they desire to be like unto in glory; and*



*that they are so far below such and such in spirituals, whom they are so far above in temporals."*

- e. From that smoke and clouds, those fears and doubts which corruption raises in the soul.
    - 1.) *[Genesis 21:19-20]- And God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water; and she went, and filled the bottle with water, and gave the lad drink. And God was with the lad; and he grew, and dwelt in the wilderness, and became an archer.*
    - 2.) *[Genesis 28:16]- And Jacob awaked out of his sleep, and he said, Surely the LORD is in this place; and I knew it not.*
    - 3.) *"Blessed Bradford in one of his epistles says thus, "O Lord, methinks I feel it so with me, sometimes as if there were no difference between my heart, and the heart of the wicked; my mind is as blind as theirs, my spirit as stout, stubborn, and rebellious as theirs, and my thoughts as confused as theirs, and my affections as disordered as theirs, and my services as formal as theirs,""*
    - 4.) *[Matthew 14:30]- But when he saw the wind boisterous, he was afraid; and beginning to sink, he cried, saying, Lord, save me.*
    - 5.) *[Genesis 20:2]- And Abraham said of Sarah his wife, She is my sister: and Abimelech king of Gerar sent, and took Sarah.*
    - 6.) *[Psalm 116:11]- I said in my haste, All men are liars.*
    - 7.) *[Psalm 31:22]- For I said in my haste, I am cut off from before thine eyes: nevertheless thou heardest the voice of my supplications when I cried unto thee.*
  - f. From his non-searching, his non-examining, his non-ransacking, of his own soul.
    - 1.) *[Zechariah 4:10]- For who hath despised the day of small things? for they shall rejoice, and shall see the plummet in the hand of Zerubbabel with those seven; they are the eyes of the LORD, which run to and fro through the whole earth.*
    - 2.) *The least spark of grace shall at last be turned into a crown of glory!*
- D. That God may deny assurance long, and yet give it in to his children at last, after patient waiting.
- 1. *[Psalm 40:1-4]- I waited patiently for the LORD; and he inclined unto me, and heard my cry. He brought me up also out of an horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a rock, and established my goings. And he hath put a new song in my mouth, even praise unto our God: many shall see it, and fear, and shall trust in the LORD. Blessed is that man that maketh the LORD his trust, and respecteth not the proud, nor such as turn aside to lies.*
  - 2. *[Song of Solomon 3:5]- I charge you, O ye daughters of Jerusalem, by the roes, and by the hinds of the field, that ye stir not up, nor awake my love, till he please.*
  - 3. *[Psalm 69:3,20]- I am weary of my crying: my throat is dried: mine eyes fail while I wait for my God. Reproach hath broken my heart; and I am full of heaviness: and I looked for some to take pity, but there was none; and for comforters, but I found none.*
  - 4. *[Psalm 69:30]- I will praise the name of God with a song, and will magnify him with thanksgiving.*
  - 5. *[Job 23:8-10]- Behold, I go forward, but he is not there; and backward, but I cannot perceive him: On the left hand, where he doth work, but I cannot behold him: he hideth himself on the right hand, that I cannot see him: But he knoweth the way that I take: when he hath tried me, I shall come forth as gold.*
  - 6. Examples in His Saints.
    - a. *Mr. Frogmorton was as holy and as choice a preacher as most was in England in those days, and he lived seven and thirty years without assurance, and then died, having assurance but an hour before he died. He died in full assurance of the justification of his person, the remission of his sins, and the salvation of his soul.*
    - b. *God denied assurance a great while to Mr. Glover, though he sought it with many prayers and tears; and yet when he was in sight of the fire, the Lord shined forth in his favour so sweetly upon him, that he cries out to his friend, "He is come, he is come!"*

- c. *Mrs. Katherine Bretterge, after many bitter conflicts with Satan the day before she died, she had sweet assurance of that unshakable kingdom, of those incorruptible riches, and of that unfading crown of righteousness.*
7. God does delay the giving in of assurance to his dearest ones.
- a. To let them know that he will be waited on, and that assurance is a jewel worth waiting for.
  - b. That we may know that God is free in his workings.
  - c. Their souls do not stand at a sufficient distance from sin.
  - d. Their souls are so taken up and filled with creature enjoyments.
  - e. *[Isaiah 59:1-2]- Behold, the LORD's hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear: But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear.*
  - f. *[Jeremiah 5:25]- Your iniquities have turned away these things, and your sins have withholden good things from you.*
  - g. *[Luke 2:7]- And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn.*
  - h. *[2 Peter 2:5]- And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly;*
  - i. *[Judges 5:28]- The mother of Sisera looked out at a window, and cried through the lattice, Why is his chariot so long in coming? why tarry the wheels of his chariots?*
- E. That those choice souls who have assurance may lose it, they may forfeit it.
- 1. *[1 John 3:9]- Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.*
  - 2. *[1 Peter 1:5]- Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.*
  - 3. *"The keeping of these two lovers, grace and assurance, together, will yield the soul two heavens, a heaven of joy and peace here, and a heaven of happiness and blessedness hereafter; but the putting these two lovers asunder will put the soul into a hell here, though it escape a hell hereafter."*
  - 4. The choicest saints may lose their assurance, and the lustre and glory of it may decay and wither.
    - a. *[Genesis 12:13]- Say, I pray thee, thou art my sister: that it may be well with me for thy sake; and my soul shall live because of thee.*
    - b. *[Genesis 20:2]- And Abraham said of Sarah his wife, She is my sister: and Abimelech king of Gerar sent, and took Sarah.*
    - c. *[Psalm 18:1-2]- I will love thee, O LORD, my strength. The LORD is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower.*
    - d. *[Psalm 42:5]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted in me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him for the help of his countenance.*
    - e. *[Psalm 38:2-6]- For thine arrows stick fast in me, and thy hand presseth me sore. There is no soundness in my flesh because of thine anger; neither is there any rest in my bones because of my sin. For mine iniquities are gone over mine head: as an heavy burden they are too heavy for me. My wounds stink and are corrupt because of my foolishness. I am troubled; I am bowed down greatly; I go mourning all the day long.*
    - f. *[Psalm 30:7]- LORD, by thy favour thou hast made my mountain to stand strong: thou didst hide thy face, and I was troubled.*
    - g. *[Psalm 51:12]- Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation; and uphold me with thy free spirit.*
    - h. *[Job 16:19]- Also now, behold, my witness is in heaven, and my record is on high.*
    - i. *[Job 19:25]- For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth:*

- j. *[Job 6:4]- For the arrows of the Almighty are within me, the poison whereof drinketh up my spirit: the terrors of God do set themselves in array against me.*
  - k. *[Job 29:2-5]- Oh that I were as in months past, as in the days when God preserved me; When his candle shined upon my head, and when by his light I walked through darkness; As I was in the days of my youth, when the secret of God was upon my tabernacle; When the Almighty was yet with me, when my children were about me;*
- F. That the certainty and infallibility of a Christian's assurance cannot be made known to any but his own heart.
1. *[John 9:25]- He answered and said, Whether he be a sinner or no, I know not: one thing I know, that, whereas I was blind, now I see.*
  2. *[Romans 8:6,11,13]- For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you. For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live.*
  3. *[Ephesians 5:8]- For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light:*
  4. *[Ephesians 2:3]- Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.*
  5. *[John 8:36]- If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.*
  6. *[2 Corinthians 3:17]- Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.*
  7. *[Galatians 1:1,13]- Paul, an apostle, (not of men, neither by man, but by Jesus Christ, and God the Father, who raised him from the dead;) For ye have heard of my conversation in time past in the Jews' religion, how that beyond measure I persecuted the church of God, and wasted it:*
  8. *[Ephesians 1:13-14]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.*
  9. *"Severinus, the Indian saint, under the power of assurance, was heard to say, O my God! do not so over-joy me; if I must still live, and have such consolations, take me to heaven,"*
  10. *"Parents do by experience feel such soundings, such meltings, such rollings, such sweet workings of their affections and hearts towards their children, that for their lives they cannot to the life describe to others what it is to be a father, to be a mother; what it is to have such depths of affections towards children."*
  11. *[Revelation 2:17]- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.*
    - a. In white stones they used to write the names of such as were victorious and conquerors. Just so, in that text, "To him who overcomes, will I give a white stone."
    - b. They used to acquit the innocent in courts of justice, by giving them a white stone; and so here the white stone points out absolution and remission. They gave black stones to note their condemnation.
    - c. They used to give a white stone to those who were chosen to any places of honor. Just so, the white stone of assurance is an evidence of our election, of our being chosen to an unshakable kingdom, incorruptible riches, and an unfading crown of righteousness. And thus much for this sixth proposition, namely, that the certainty and infallibility of a Christian's assurance cannot be made known to any but his own heart.
  - 1.) *[Hebrews 12:28]- Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear:*

- 2.) *[Matthew 6:20]- But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal:*
  - 3.) *[1 Peter 1:4]- To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you,*
- G. That there are some special seasons and times, wherein the Lord is graciously pleased to give to his children a sweet assurance of his favour and love.
1. At first conversion, though not always.
    - a. Proof texts.
      - 1.) *[Isaiah 43:25]- I, even I, am he that blotteth out thy transgressions for mine own sake, and will not remember thy sins.*
      - 2.) *[1 Corinthians 1:30]- But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:*
      - 3.) *[Revelation 3:18]- I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*
      - 4.) *[Isaiah 25:6]- And in this mountain shall the LORD of hosts make unto all people a feast of fat things, a feast of wines on the lees, of fat things full of marrow, of wines on the lees well refined.*
      - 5.) *[Luke 15:22-23]- But the father said to his servants, Bring forth the best robe, and put it on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on his feet: And bring hither the fatted calf, and kill it; and let us eat, and be merry:*
    - b. That they may not be swallowed up of sorrow, under the pangs and throes of the new birth.
      - 1.) *[Job 33:24]- Then he is gracious unto him, and saith, Deliver him from going down to the pit: I have found a ransom.*
    - c. That he may the more raise and inflame their love and affections to him.
      - 1.) *"King Antigonus, pulling a sheep with his own hands out of a dirty ditch, drew his subjects exceedingly to commend him and love him. So King Jesus, pulling poor souls out of their sins, and as it were out of hell, cannot but draw them to be much in the commendations of Christ, and strong in their love to Christ."*
    - d. That they may be the more active, fervent, abundant, and constant in ways of grace and holiness.
      - 1.) *"Look! What wings are to the bird, oil to the wheels, weights to the clock, a reward to the coward, and the loadstone to the needle—that are the smiles and discoveries of God to a poor soul at his conversion."*
    - e. To fence and fortify them against Satan's fiery temptations.
      - 1.) *[Matthew 3:16-17]- And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him: And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.*
      - 2.) *[Mark 9:25-26]- When Jesus saw that the people came running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, Thou dumb and deaf spirit, I charge thee, come out of him, and enter no more into him. And the spirit cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, He is dead.*
      - 3.) *[Colossians 1:13]- Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:*
      - 4.) *"Pharaoh in his furious and violent pursuing after Israel, when he saw that God would bring them from under his power, was a type of Satan."*
    - f. Cautions.
      - 1.) God manifests his love only to some at their first conversion, not to all.

- 2.) A man may at first conversion have such a clear glorious manifestation of God's love to him, and of his interest in God, and his right to glory, that he may not have the like all his days after.
  - a.) *[Psalm 137:2]- We hanged our harps upon the willows in the midst thereof.*
  - b.) *[Psalm 77:7-9]- Will the Lord cast off for ever? and will he be favourable no more? Is his mercy clean gone for ever? doth his promise fail for evermore? Hath God forgotten to be gracious? hath he in anger shut up his tender mercies? Selah.*
2. When he intends to put them upon some high and hard, some difficult and dangerous service.
  - a. Proof texts.
    - 1.) *[Matthew 17:4-5]- Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias. While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.*
    - 2.) *[Acts 9:3-6]- And as he journeyed, he came near Damascus: and suddenly there shined round about him a light from heaven: And he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? And he said, Who art thou, Lord? And the Lord said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest: it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks. And he trembling and astonished said, Lord, what wilt thou have me to do? And the Lord said unto him, Arise, and go into the city, and it shall be told thee what thou must do.*
    - 3.) *[2 Corinthians 11:23]- Are they ministers of Christ? (I speak as a fool) I am more; in labours more abundant, in stripes above measure, in prisons more frequent, in deaths oft.*
  - b. God's blessings when He has put them upon weighty services.
    - 1.) He has shed abroad his love into their hearts.
    - 2.) He has set his seal upon their spirits.
    - 3.) He has set them as a seal upon His hand.
    - 4.) He has assured them of his countenance, and of his presence, and of his assistance.
    - 5.) He will stand by them, and strengthen them, and support them, and uphold them with the right hand of his righteousness.
    - 6.) His power should be theirs to defend them.
    - 7.) His wisdom should be theirs to direct them.
    - 8.) His goodness should be theirs to supply them.
    - 9.) His grace should be theirs to heal them.
    - 10.) His mercy should be theirs to pardon them.
    - 11.) His joy should be theirs to strengthen them.
    - 12.) His promise should be theirs to cheer them.
    - 13.) His Spirit should be theirs to lead them
  - c. Reasons.
    - 1.) That they may not faint nor falter in his service—but go through it resolutely and bravely,
      - a.) *[Joshua 1:5-6]- There shall not any man be able to stand before thee all the days of thy life: as I was with Moses, so I will be with thee: I will not fail thee, nor forsake thee. Be strong and of a good courage: for unto this people shalt thou divide for an inheritance the land, which I sware unto their fathers to give them.*
      - b.) *[Joshua 24:15]- And if it seem evil unto you to serve the LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD.*

- c.) *[Acts 20:23]- Save that the Holy Ghost witnesseth in every city, saying that bonds and afflictions abide me.*
  - d.) *[Galatians 1:15-17]- But when it pleased God, who separated me from my mother's womb, and called me by his grace, To reveal his Son in me, that I might preach him among the heathen; immediately I conferred not with flesh and blood: Neither went I up to Jerusalem to them which were apostles before me; but I went into Arabia, and returned again unto Damascus.*
  - e.) *[2 Timothy 4:16-17]- At my first answer no man stood with me, but all men forsook me: I pray God that it may not be laid to their charge. Notwithstanding the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me; that by me the preaching might be fully known, and that all the Gentiles might hear: and I was delivered out of the mouth of the lion.*
- 2.) Otherwise he would not only act below himself, as he is a wise God, a faithful God, a powerful God, a merciful God, a righteous God.
- a.) *[Isaiah 42:8]- I am the LORD: that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.*
  - b.) *[Isaiah 48:11]- For mine own sake, even for mine own sake, will I do it: for how should my name be polluted? and I will not give my glory unto another.*
- 3.) That they may never repent of listing themselves in his service.
- a.) *"Diocletian, the worst and last persecutor in all the ten persecutions, observed, 'that the more he sought to blot out the name of Christ, the more it became legible; and the more he sought to block up the way of Christ, the more it became passable; and whatever of Christ he thought to root out, it rooted the deeper, and rose the higher in the hearts and lives of the saints, among whom he had scattered the beams of his love and the rich pearls of his grace.'"*
- 4.) That the mouths of the wicked may be stopped.
- a.) *[Exodus 32:12]- Wherefore should the Egyptians speak, and say, For mischief did he bring them out, to slay them in the mountains, and to consume them from the face of the earth? Turn from thy fierce wrath, and repent of this evil against thy people.*
  - b.) *[Numbers 14:12-16]- I will smite them with the pestilence, and disinherit them, and will make of thee a greater nation and mightier than they. And Moses said unto the LORD, Then the Egyptians shall hear it, (for thou broughtest up this people in thy might from among them;) And they will tell it to the inhabitants of this land: for they have heard that thou LORD art among this people, that thou LORD art seen face to face, and that thy cloud standeth over them, and that thou goest before them, by day time in a pillar of a cloud, and in a pillar of fire by night. Now if thou shalt kill all this people as one man, then the nations which have heard the fame of thee will speak, saying, Because the LORD was not able to bring this people into the land which he swore unto them, therefore he hath slain them in the wilderness.*
3. Waiting times are times wherein God is pleased to give his people some secret tastes of his love, and to lift up the light of his countenance upon them:
- a.) *[Psalm 40:1-3]- I waited patiently for the LORD; and he inclined unto me, and heard my cry. He brought me up also out of an horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a rock, and established my goings. And he hath put a new song in my mouth, even praise unto our God: many shall see it, and fear, and shall trust in the LORD.*
  - b.) *[Luke 2:25-33]- And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name was Simeon; and the same man was just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him. And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Ghost, that he*

*should not see death, before he had seen the Lord's Christ. And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to do for him after the custom of the law, Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said, Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word: For mine eyes have seen thy salvation, Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people; A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel. And Joseph and his mother marvelled at those things which were spoken of him.*

- c.) *[Psalm 27:14]- Wait on the LORD: be of good courage, and he shall strengthen thine heart: wait, I say, on the LORD.*
  - d.) *[Isaiah 49:23]- And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.*
  - e.) *[Lamentations 3:25]- The LORD is good unto them that wait for him, to the soul that seeketh him.*
  - f.) *[Hebrews 10:37]- For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.*
4. Suffering times are times wherein the Lord is pleased to give his people some sense of his favour.
- a. *[Matthew 5:11-12]- Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake.*
  - b. *[Acts 16:23-24]- And when they had laid many stripes upon them, they cast them into prison, charging the jailor to keep them safely: Who, having received such a charge, thrust them into the inner prison, and made their feet fast in the stocks.*
  - c. *[Revelation 1:9-10]- I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God, and for the testimony of Jesus Christ. I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet,*
- d. Reasons.
- 1.) That their patience and constancy under suffering may be invincible.
    - a.) *"John Huss, martyr, had such choice discoveries of God, and such sweet influences of the Spirit, as made his patience and constancy invincible. When he was brought forth to be burned, they put on his head a crown of paper, painted over with ugly devils; but when he saw it, he said, "My Lord Jesus Christ, for my sake, did wear a crown of thorns; why should not I then for his sake wear this light crown, be it never so ignominious? Truly I will do it, and that willingly." And as they tied his neck with a chain to the stake, smiling, he said, "That he would willingly receive the same chain for Jesus Christ's sake, who he knew was bound with a far worse chain for his sake.""*
  - 2.) For the confirmation of some, for the conversion of others, and for the greater conviction and confusion of their adversaries.
    - a.) *[Philippians 1:14]- And many of the brethren in the Lord, waxing confident by my bonds, are much more bold to speak the word without fear.*
    - b.) *[Philemon 10]- I beseech thee for my son Onesimus, whom I have begotten in my bonds:*
    - c.) *[Song of Solomon 2:5]- Stay me with flagons, comfort me with apples: for I am sick of love.*
    - d.) *"Hegesippus reports an observation of Antoninus the emperor, namely, "That the Christians were most courageous and confident always in earthquakes, while his own heathen soldiers were at such times most fearful and dispirited.""*

- e.) *[2 Timothy 4:7-8]- I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith: Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
  - f.) *[Revelation 12:11]- And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.*
- 3.) For the praise of his own grace, and for the glory of his own name.
- a.) *[Exodus 32:12]- Wherefore should the Egyptians speak, and say, For mischief did he bring them out, to slay them in the mountains, and to consume them from the face of the earth? Turn from thy fierce wrath, and repent of this evil against thy people.*
  - b.) *[Numbers 14:13]- And Moses said unto the LORD, Then the Egyptians shall hear it, (for thou broughtest up this people in thy might from among them;)*
  - c.) *[1 Peter 4:14]- If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you: on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified.*
  - d.) *[Daniel 3:28-30]- Then Nebuchadnezzar spake, and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any god, except their own God. Therefore I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak any thing amiss against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, shall be cut in pieces, and their houses shall be made a dunghill: because there is no other God that can deliver after this sort. Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, in the province of Babylon.*
  - e.) *[Daniel 6:25-27]- Then king Darius wrote unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you. I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the God of Daniel: for he is the living God, and stedfast for ever, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed, and his dominion shall be even unto the end. He delivereth and rescueth, and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who hath delivered Daniel from the power of the lions.*
  - f.) *[Isaiah 48:11]- For mine own sake, even for mine own sake, will I do it: for how should my name be polluted? and I will not give my glory unto another.*
  - g.) *[Genesis 39:20]- And Joseph's master took him, and put him into the prison, a place where the king's prisoners were bound: and he was there in the prison.*
  - h.) *[Daniel 6:10]- Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime.*
  - i.) *[Zechariah 4:7]- Who art thou, O great mountain? before Zerubbabel thou shalt become a plain: and he shall bring forth the headstone thereof with shoutings, crying, Grace, grace unto it.*
5. Believing times are times wherein the Lord is graciously pleased to lift up the light of his countenance upon his people.
- a. *[Ephesians 1:13]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,*
  - b. *[Romans 15:13]- Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Ghost.*
  - c. *[Psalm 63:1]- O God, thou art my God; early will I seek thee: my soul thirsteth for thee, my flesh longeth for thee in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is;*



- d. *[Psalm 48:14]- For this God is our God for ever and ever: he will be our guide even unto death.*
  - e. *[Song of Solomon 7:10]- I am my beloved's, and his desire is toward me.*
  - f. *[2 Peter 1:4]- Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.*
  - g. *[2 Timothy 4:8]- Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
  - h. *[Judges 14:14]- And he said unto them, Out of the eater came forth meat, and out of the strong came forth sweetness. And they could not in three days expound the riddle.*
  - i. *[1 Peter 1:8]- Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory:*
  - j. *[Romans 4:18]- Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be.*
  - k. *[Genesis 22:8,12,14-17]- And Abraham said, My son, God will provide himself a lamb for a burnt offering: so they went both of them together. And he said, Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him: for now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son from me. And Abraham called the name of that place Jehovahjireh: as it is said to this day, In the mount of the LORD it shall be seen. And the angel of the LORD called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time, And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the LORD, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son: That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;*
6. Hearing and receiving times, are times wherein the Lord is graciously pleased to cause his face to shine upon his people.
- a. *[Acts 10:44]- While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.*
  - b. *[Galatians 3:2]- This only would I learn of you, Received ye the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?*
  - c. *[Romans 10:17]- So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.*
  - d. *[1 Thessalonians 1:5-6]- For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost.*
  - e. *"Many a cold soul has been warmed in this ordinance, and many a hungry soul has been fed with manna in this ordinance, and many a thirsty soul has been refreshed with wine upon the lees in this ordinance, and many a dull soul has been quickened in this ordinance."*
  - f. *[1 Corinthians 11:27]- Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord.*
  - g. Reasons.
    - 1.) That they may highly prize the ordinances.
      - a.) *[Psalm 84:10-11]- For a day in thy courts is better than a thousand. I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God, than to dwell in the tents of wickedness. For the LORD God is a sun and shield: the LORD will give grace and glory: no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly.*
      - b.) *[2 Samuel 19:32]- Now Barzillai was a very aged man, even fourscore years old: and he had provided the king of sustenance while he lay at Mahanaim; for he was a very great man.*
      - c.) *[Acts 18.12-17]- And when Gallio was the deputy of Achaia, the Jews made insurrection with one accord against Paul, and brought him to the judgment*

*seat, Saying, This fellow persuadeth men to worship God contrary to the law. And when Paul was now about to open his mouth, Gallio said unto the Jews, If it were a matter of wrong or wicked lewdness, O ye Jews, reason would that I should bear with you: But if it be a question of words and names, and of your law, look ye to it; for I will be no judge of such matters. And he drave them from the judgment seat. Then all the Greeks took Sosthenes, the chief ruler of the synagogue, and beat him before the judgment seat. And Gallio cared for none of those things.*

- d.) *[Job 23:12]- Neither have I gone back from the commandment of his lips; I have esteemed the words of his mouth more than my necessary food.*
  - e.) *[Psalm 119:72]- The law of thy mouth is better unto me than thousands of gold and silver.*
  - f.) *[Psalm 27:4]- One thing have I desired of the LORD, that will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the LORD all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of the LORD, and to enquire in his temple.*
- 2.) That he may keep them close to ordinances and constant in ordinances.
- a.) *[Proverbs 8:34-35]- Blessed is the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors. For whoso findeth me findeth life, and shall obtain favour of the LORD.*
  - b.) *[Ruth 1:15-17]- And she said, Behold, thy sister in law is gone back unto her people, and unto her gods: return thou after thy sister in law. And Ruth said, Intreat me not to leave thee, or to return from following after thee: for whither thou goest, I will go; and where thou lodgest, I will lodge: thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God: Where thou diest, will I die, and there will I be buried: the LORD do so to me, and more also, if ought but death part thee and me.*
  - c.) *[Joshua 24:15]- And if it seem evil unto you to serve the LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD.*
  - d.) *[Malachi 3:1]- Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the LORD, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the LORD of hosts.*
  - e.) *[Revelation 2:1]- Unto the angel of the church of Ephesus write; These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks;*
  - f.) *[Psalm 19:11]- Moreover by them is thy servant warned: and in keeping of them there is great reward.*
  - g.) *[Exodus 21:5]- And if the servant shall plainly say, I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free:*
  - h.) *[Deuteronomy 15:16-17]- And it shall be, if he say unto thee, I will not go away from thee; because he loveth thee and thine house, because he is well with thee; Then thou shalt take an aul, and thrust it through his ear unto the door, and he shall be thy servant for ever. And also unto thy maidservant thou shalt do likewise.*
- 3.) To fence and strengthen their souls against all those temptations that they may meet with from Satan and his instruments, that lie in wait to deceive.
- 4.) That he may fit and ripen them for heaven, and make them look and long more after a perfect, complete, and full enjoyment of God.

- a.) *[Isaiah 64:5]- Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.*
  - b.) *[Psalm 42:1-2]- As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God. My soul thirsteth for God, for the living God: when shall I come and appear before God?*
  - c.) *[Psalm 63:1-2]- O God, thou art my God; early will I seek thee: my soul thirsteth for thee, my flesh longeth for thee in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is; To see thy power and thy glory, so as I have seen thee in the sanctuary.*
  - d.) *"Plutarch says, that when "once the Gauls had tasted of the sweet wine which was made of the grapes of Italy, nothing would satisfy them but Italy, Italy." So a soul that has tasted of the sweetness and goodness of God in ordinances, nothing will satisfy it—but more of that goodness and sweetness."*
- 5.) That they may have wherewithal to silence and stop the mouths of wicked and ungodly men.
- a.) *[Malachi 3:13-14]- Your words have been stout against me, saith the LORD. Yet ye say, What have we spoken so much against thee? Ye have said, It is vain to serve God: and what profit is it that we have kept his ordinance, and that we have walked mournfully before the LORD of hosts?*
  - b.) *[Job 21:14-15]- Therefore they say unto God, Depart from us; for we desire not the knowledge of thy ways. What is the Almighty, that we should serve him? and what profit should we have, if we pray unto him?*
  - c.) *[Psalm 84:10]- For a day in thy courts is better than a thousand. I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God, than to dwell in the tents of wickedness.*
  - d.) *[Proverbs 3:17]- Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.*
  - e.) *[Psalm 65:11]- Thou crownest the year with thy goodness; and thy paths drop fatness.*
- h. Cautions.
- 1.) That even believers may sometimes come and go from this ordinance, without that comfort, that assurance, that joy, that refreshment that others have, and may meet with.
    - a.) *[2 Chronicles 30:19-20]- That prepareth his heart to seek God, the LORD God of his fathers, though he be not cleansed according to the purification of the sanctuary. And the LORD hearkened to Hezekiah, and healed the people.*
    - b.) *[1 Corinthians 11:20-22,33-34]- When ye come together therefore into one place, this is not to eat the Lord's supper. For in eating every one taketh before other his own supper: and one is hungry, and another is drunken. What? have ye not houses to eat and to drink in? or despise ye the church of God, and shame them that have not? what shall I say to you? shall I praise you in this? I praise you not. Wherefore, my brethren, when ye come together to eat, tarry one for another. And if any man hunger, let him eat at home; that ye come not together unto condemnation. And the rest will I set in order when I come.*
    - c.) *[Isaiah 64:7]- And there is none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of thee: for thou hast hid thy face from us, and hast consumed us, because of our iniquities.*
    - d.) *[Psalm 77:2]- In the day of my trouble I sought the Lord: my sore ran in the night, and ceased not: my soul refused to be comforted.*
    - e.) *[Genesis 31:5]- And said unto them, I see your father's countenance, that it is not toward me as before; but the God of my father hath been with me.*
  - 2.) That though God does in this ordinance withhold comfort and assurance from you, yet you must hold on in the duty, you must wait at hope's hospital.

- a.) *“Laban often changed Jacob's wages, yet Jacob never changed nor neglected his work. Though God should change your wages, your comforts into discomforts, your spring into an autumn, etc., yet you must never change nor neglect your work, which is obeying, believing, and waiting—until God, in his ordinances, shall lift up the light of his countenance upon you, and turn your night into day, and your mourning into rejoicing.”*
- 3.) They would give a world, were it in their power, for those strong comforts and full assurance that others enjoy in this ordinance.
- a.) *[Lamentations 1:16]- For these things I weep; mine eye, mine eye runneth down with water, because the comforter that should relieve my soul is far from me: my children are desolate, because the enemy prevailed.*
- b.) *[Song of Solomon 2:5,16]- Stay me with flagons, comfort me with apples: for I am sick of love. My beloved is mine, and I am his: he feedeth among the lilies.*
7. Times of personal afflictions are times wherein the Lord is graciously pleased to vouchsafe to his people sweet manifestations of his love and favour.
- a. *[Psalm 71:20-21]- Thou, which hast shewed me great and sore troubles, shalt quicken me again, and shalt bring me up again from the depths of the earth. Thou shalt increase my greatness, and comfort me on every side.*
- b. *[Psalm 94:19]- In the multitude of my thoughts within me thy comforts delight my soul.*
- c. *[Hosea 2:14]- Therefore, behold, I will allure her, and bring her into the wilderness, and speak comfortably unto her.*
- d. *[Isaiah 38:10-11,20]- I said in the cutting off of my days, I shall go to the gates of the grave: I am deprived of the residue of my years. I said, I shall not see the LORD, even the LORD, in the land of the living: I shall behold man no more with the inhabitants of the world. The LORD was ready to save me: therefore we will sing my songs to the stringed instruments all the days of our life in the house of the LORD.*
- e. *[Habakkuk 3:16-18]- When I heard, my belly trembled; my lips quivered at the voice: rottenness entered into my bones, and I trembled in myself, that I might rest in the day of trouble: when he cometh up unto the people, he will invade them with his troops. Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls: Yet I will rejoice in the LORD, I will joy in the God of my salvation.*
8. Praying times are times wherein the Lord is graciously pleased to give his people some sweet and comfortable assurance of his love and favour towards them.
- a. *“The best and the sweetest flowers of paradise, God gives to his people when they are upon their knees. Prayer is the gate of heaven, a key to let us into paradise.”*
- b. *[Daniel 9:17-24]- Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord's sake. O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies. O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive; O Lord, hearken and do; defer not, for thine own sake, O my God: for thy city and thy people are called by thy name. And whiles I was speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the LORD my God for the holy mountain of my God; Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding. At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to shew thee; for thou art greatly beloved:*

*therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision. Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.*

- c. *[Acts 10:1-4]- There was a certain man in Caesarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian band, A devout man, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God alway. He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him, Cornelius. And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said unto him, Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God.*
- d. *[Acts 10:9-16]-On the morrow, as they went on their journey, and drew nigh unto the city, Peter went up upon the housetop to pray about the sixth hour: And he became very hungry, and would have eaten: but while they made ready, he fell into a trance, And saw heaven opened, and a certain vessel descending upon him, as it had been a great sheet knit at the four corners, and let down to the earth: Wherein were all manner of fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air. And there came a voice to him, Rise, Peter; kill, and eat. But Peter said, Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten any thing that is common or unclean. And the voice spake unto him again the second time, What God hath cleansed, that call not thou common. This was done thrice: and the vessel was received up again into heaven.*
- e. *[Acts 9:11-16]- And the Lord said unto him, Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and enquire in the house of Judas for one called Saul, of Tarsus: for, behold, he prayeth, And hath seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in, and putting his hand on him, that he might receive his sight. Then Ananias answered, Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to thy saints at Jerusalem: And here he hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that call on thy name. But the Lord said unto him, Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel: For I will shew him how great things he must suffer for my name's sake.*
- f. *[Matthew 17:1-2]- And after six days Jesus taketh Peter, James, and John his brother, and bringeth them up into an high mountain apart, And was transfigured before them: and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light.*
- g. *[2 Kings 2:15]- And when the sons of the prophets which were to view at Jericho saw him, they said, The spirit of Elijah doth rest on Elisha. And they came to meet him, and bowed themselves to the ground before him.*
- h. Objection.
  - 1.) We have been at the door of mercy, early and late, for assurance, and yet we have not obtained it;
    - a.) *[Lamentations 3:8]- Also when I cry and shout, he shutteth out my prayer.*
    - b.) Answer 1: Assurance makes most for your comfort—but holiness makes most for God's honor.
      - 1.) *[Malachi 4:2]- But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.*
      - 2.) *[Psalm 16:3]- But to the saints that are in the earth, and to the excellent, in whom is all my delight.*
      - 3.) *[Revelation 3:18]- I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*
      - 4.) *[Romans 8:15-17]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the*

*children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.*

c.) Answer 2: It may be you are not yet fit for so choice a mercy, you are not able to bear so great a favour.

- 1.) *[Hebrews 5:12,14]- For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.*
- 2.) *[1 Corinthians 3:1-3]- And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ. I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able. For ye are yet carnal: for whereas there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are ye not carnal, and walk as men?*
- 3.) *[Deuteronomy 33:27]- The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them.*
- 4.) *[Psalm 45:13]- The king's daughter is all glorious within: her clothing is of wrought gold.*

d.) Answer 3: You must distinguish between delays and denials. God may delay us, when he does not deny us; he may defer the giving in of a mercy, and yet, at last, give the very mercy begged.

- 1.) *[1 Samuel 1:18]- And she said, Let thine handmaid find grace in thy sight. So the woman went her way, and did eat, and her countenance was no more sad.*
- 2.) *[Matthew 15:21-29]- Then Jesus went thence, and departed into the coasts of Tyre and Sidon. And, behold, a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, Have mercy on me, O Lord, thou son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil. But he answered her not a word. And his disciples came and besought him, saying, Send her away; for she crieth after us. But he answered and said, I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel. Then came she and worshipped him, saying, Lord, help me. But he answered and said, It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it to dogs. And she said, Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table. Then Jesus answered and said unto her, O woman, great is thy faith: be it unto thee even as thou wilt. And her daughter was made whole from that very hour. And Jesus departed from thence, and came nigh unto the sea of Galilee; and went up into a mountain, and sat down there.*
- 3.) *[Daniel 9:15-25]- And now, O Lord our God, that hast brought thy people forth out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and hast gotten thee renown, as at this day; we have sinned, we have done wickedly. O LORD, according to all thy righteousness, I beseech thee, let thine anger and thy fury be turned away from thy city Jerusalem, thy holy mountain: because for our sins, and for the iniquities of our fathers, Jerusalem and thy people are become a reproach to all that are about us. Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord's sake. O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies. O Lord, hear; O*

*Lord, forgive; O Lord, hearken and do; defer not, for thine own sake, O my God: for thy city and thy people are called by thy name. And whiles I was speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the LORD my God for the holy mountain of my God; Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding. At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to shew thee; for thou art greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision. Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy. Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.*

- 4.) *[Habakkuk 2:3]- For the vision is yet for an appointed time, but at the end it shall speak, and not lie: though it tarry, wait for it; because it will surely come, it will not tarry.*
  - 5.) *[Galatians 6:9]- And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.*
  - 6.) *[James 5:7]- Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain.*
9. Sometimes before the soul is deeply engaged in sore conflicts with Satan.
    - a. *[John 10:28]- And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.*
    - b. *[Revelation 5:5]- And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.*
    - c. *[Exodus 17:8]- Then came Amalek, and fought with Israel in Rephidim.*
    - d. *[2 Corinthians 12:1-8]- It is not expedient for me doubtless to glory. I will come to visions and revelations of the Lord. I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter. Of such an one will I glory: yet of myself I will not glory, but in mine infirmities. For though I would desire to glory, I shall not be a fool; for I will say the truth: but now I forbear, lest any man should think of me above that which he seeth me to be, or that he heareth of me. And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me.*
    - e. *[Matthew 3:17]- And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.*
    - f. *[Psalm 16:11]- Thou wilt shew me the path of life: in thy presence is fulness of joy; at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.*
  10. After some sharp conflicts with Satan.

- a. *[Matthew 4:11]- Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.*
- b. *[2 Corinthians 12:7-10]- And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me. And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may rest upon me. Therefore I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses for Christ's sake: for when I am weak, then am I strong.*
- c. *[Revelation 7:17]- For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.*
- d. *[Ephesians 6:12]- For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.*
- e. *[Revelation 3:5]- He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.*
- f. *[Revelation 7:9]- After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands;*

IV. Several hindrances and impediments that keep poor souls from assurance; with the means and helps to remove those impediments and hindrances.

A. Despairing thoughts of mercy.

1. Despairing thoughts of mercy make a man below the beast, which perishes.
2. O despairing souls, the arms of mercy are open to receive a Manasseh, a monster, a devil incarnate;
  - a. *[2 Chronicles 33:11-13]- Wherefore the LORD brought upon them the captains of the host of the king of Assyria, which took Manasseh among the thorns, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon. And when he was in affliction, he besought the LORD his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers, And prayed unto him: and he was intreated of him, and heard his supplication, and brought him again to Jerusalem into his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that the LORD he was God.*
  - b. *[Luke 7:47]- Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, the same loveth little.*
  - c. *[Acts 8:1-2]- And Saul was consenting unto his death. And at that time there was a great persecution against the church which was at Jerusalem; and they were all scattered abroad throughout the regions of Judaea and Samaria, except the apostles. And devout men carried Stephen to his burial, and made great lamentation over him.*
  - d. *[Acts 9:1]- And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the disciples of the Lord, went unto the high priest,*
  - e. *[Acts 26:11]- And I punished them oft in every synagogue, and compelled them to blaspheme; and being exceedingly mad against them, I persecuted them even unto strange cities.*
  - f. *[1 Tim 1:13,15-16]- Who was before a blasphemer, and a persecutor, and injurious: but I obtained mercy, because I did it ignorantly in unbelief. This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief. Howbeit for this cause I obtained mercy, that in me first Jesus Christ might shew forth all longsuffering, for a pattern to them which should hereafter believe on him to life everlasting.*



- g. *[Luke 15:17-22]- And when he came to himself, he said, How many hired servants of my father's have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger! I will arise and go to my father, and will say unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee, And am no more worthy to be called thy son: make me as one of thy hired servants. And he arose, and came to his father. But when he was yet a great way off, his father saw him, and had compassion, and ran, and fell on his neck, and kissed him. And the son said unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight, and am no more worthy to be called thy son. But the father said to his servants, Bring forth the best robe, and put it on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on his feet:*
3. O despairing soul, that you shall die in your sins, and lie down at last in everlasting sorrow. O despairing souls, are you good at burning, that you have no mercy on yourselves—but to argue to your own undoing?
  - a. *[1 Corinthians 6:9-11]- Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God. And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.*
4. O despairing soul, is not the grace of God free grace, is not man's salvation of free grace?
  - a. *[Ephesians 2:8]- For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:*
  - b. *[Romans 11:5]- Even so then at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace.*
  - c. *[John 3:16]- For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.*
  - d. *[Isaiah 9:6]- For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.*
  - e. *[John 4:10]- Jesus answered and said unto her, If thou knewest the gift of God, and who it is that saith to thee, Give me to drink; thou wouldest have asked of him, and he would have given thee living water.*
5. Oh! but God's heart is so strongly set upon sinners, that he freely gives Jesus Christ, who is his firstborn, who is his very picture, who is his beloved Benjamin, who is his chief joy, who is his greatest delight.
  - a. *[Proverbs 8:30]- Then I was by him, as one brought up with him: and I was daily his delight, rejoicing always before him;*
6. As Jesus Christ is a gift of free grace, or a free-grace gift, so the precious **covenant** of grace is a gift of grace:
  - a. *[Genesis 17:2]- And I will make my covenant between me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly.*
  - b. *[Numbers 25:12]- Wherefore say, Behold, I give unto him my covenant of peace:*
  - c. *[Hosea 14:4]- I will heal their backsliding, I will love them freely: for mine anger is turned away from him.*
  - d. *[Deuteronomy 7:7-8]- The LORD did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: But because the LORD loved you, and because he would keep the oath which he had sworn unto your fathers, hath the LORD brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.*
7. God will have all blessings and happiness to flow from free grace.
  - a. That the worst of sinners may have strong grounds for hope and comfort.
  - b. For the praise of his own glory.

- c. That vain man may not boast.
  - d. That our mercies and blessings may be sure to us.
8. As God loves freely, so God **justifies** us freely:
    - a. *[Romans 3:24]- Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:*
    - b. *[Romans 6:23]- For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.*
    - c. *[John 10:28]- And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.*
  9. Truly, seeing all happiness and blessedness comes in a way of free grace, and not in a way of doing, not in a way of works, you should arise, O despairing souls! and cast off all despairing thoughts, and drink of the waters of life freely.
    - a. *[Revelation 21:6]- And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.*
    - b. *[Revelation 22:18]- For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book:*
    - c. *[Isaiah 52:1]- Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.*
  10. O despairing souls! do you understand, and most seriously and frequently ponder upon those particular scriptures that do most clearly, sweetly, and fully discover the mercies of God, the affections of God, the grace and favour of God to poor sinners
    - a. *[Psalm 86:5]- For thou, Lord, art good, and ready to forgive; and plenteous in mercy unto all them that call upon thee.*
  11. O despairing souls! As a circle begins everywhere—but ends nowhere, so do the mercies of God.
    - a. *[Nehemiah 9:16-17]- But they and our fathers dealt proudly, and hardened their necks, and hearkened not to thy commandments, And refused to obey, neither were mindful of thy wonders that thou didst among them; but hardened their necks, and in their rebellion appointed a captain to return to their bondage: but thou art a God ready to pardon, gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and forsookest them not.*
    - b. *[Micah 7:18]- Who is a God like unto thee, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? he retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth in mercy.*
  12. O despairing soul! do you make your life a hell, by having such low and mean thoughts of God's mercy, and by measuring of the mercies and affections of God by the narrow quantity of your weak and dark understanding?
    - a. *[Luke 13:7]- Then said he unto the dresser of his vineyard, Behold, these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig tree, and find none: cut it down; why cumbereth it the ground?*
    - b. *[Jeremiah 3:13-15]- Only acknowledge thine iniquity, that thou hast transgressed against the LORD thy God, and hast scattered thy ways to the strangers under every green tree, and ye have not obeyed my voice, saith the LORD. Turn, O backsliding children, saith the LORD; for I am married unto you: and I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion: And I will give you pastors according to mine heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding.*

13. O despairing souls! to these scriptures:
- a. *[Isaiah 55:7-9]- Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon. For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the LORD. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.*
  - b. *[Numbers 14:19-20]- Pardon, I beseech thee, the iniquity of this people according unto the greatness of thy mercy, and as thou hast forgiven this people, from Egypt even until now. And the LORD said, I have pardoned according to thy word:*
  - c. *[Exodus 34:6-7]- And the LORD passed by before him, and proclaimed, The LORD, The LORD God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and that will by no means clear the guilty; visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children's children, unto the third and to the fourth generation.*
  - d. *[Micah 7:18-19]- Who is a God like unto thee, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? he retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth in mercy. He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.*
  - e. *[Isaiah 30:18-19]- And therefore will the LORD wait, that he may be gracious unto you, and therefore will he be exalted, that he may have mercy upon you: for the LORD is a God of judgment: blessed are all they that wait for him. For the people shall dwell in Zion at Jerusalem: thou shalt weep no more: he will be very gracious unto thee at the voice of thy cry; when he shall hear it, he will answer thee.*
  - f. *[Psalm 78:34-40]- When he slew them, then they sought him: and they returned and enquired early after God. And they remembered that God was their rock, and the high God their redeemer. Nevertheless they did flatter him with their mouth, and they lied unto him with their tongues. For their heart was not right with him, neither were they stedfast in his covenant. But he, being full of compassion, forgave their iniquity, and destroyed them not: yea, many a time turned he his anger away, and did not stir up all his wrath. For he remembered that they were but flesh; a wind that passeth away, and cometh not again. How oft did they provoke him in the wilderness, and grieve him in the desert!*
  - g. *[Psalm 103:8-13]- The LORD is merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and plenteous in mercy. He will not always chide: neither will he keep his anger for ever. He hath not dealt with us after our sins; nor rewarded us according to our iniquities. For as the heaven is high above the earth, so great is his mercy toward them that fear him. As far as the east is from the west, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us. Like as a father pitieth his children, so the LORD pitieth them that fear him.*
  - h. *[Jeremiah 3:12]- Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say, Return, thou backsliding Israel, saith the LORD; and I will not cause mine anger to fall upon you: for I am merciful, saith the LORD, and I will not keep anger for ever.*
  - i. *[1 Timothy 1:15-17]- This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief. Howbeit for this cause I obtained mercy, that in me first Jesus Christ might shew forth all longsuffering, for a pattern to them which should hereafter believe on him to life everlasting. Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, be honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen.*
14. O despairing souls, do you not do infinite wrong to the precious blood of the Lord Jesus?
- a. Precious blood of Christ.
    - 1.) ***[1 Peter 1:19]- But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:***
  - b. Precious faith in Christ.

- 1.) *[2 Peter 1:1]-Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ:*
  - c. Precious promises.
    - 1.) *[2 Peter 1:4]- Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.*
  - d. Has not the blood of Jesus Christ washed away the sins of a world of notorious sinners; and is it not of virtue to wash away the sins of one sinner?
    - 1.) *[1 John 1:7-9]- But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin. If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.*
    - 2.) *"There were five people who were studying what was the best means to mortify sin. One said, to meditate on death; the second, to meditate on judgment; the third, to meditate on the joys of heaven; the fourth, to meditate on the torments of hell; the fifth, to meditate on the blood and sufferings of Jesus Christ: and certainly, the last is the choicest and strongest motive of all to the mortifying of sin."*
15. O despairing souls, despairing souls! if ever you would cast off your despairing thoughts and get out of your present hell, then dwell much, muse much, and apply much this precious blood to your own souls.
- a. *[Isaiah 55:11]- So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.*
  - b. *[Isaiah 56:5]- Even unto them will I give in mine house and within my walls a place and a name better than of sons and of daughters: I will give them an everlasting name, that shall not be cut off.*
  - c. *[Isaiah 60:19-20]- The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the LORD shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory. Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the LORD shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.*
  - d. *[Isaiah 62:4-5]- Thou shalt no more be termed Forsaken; neither shall thy land any more be termed Desolate: but thou shalt be called Hephzibah, and thy land Beulah: for the LORD delighteth in thee, and thy land shall be married. For as a young man marieth a virgin, so shall thy sons marry thee: and as the bridegroom rejoiceth over the bride, so shall thy God rejoice over thee.*
  - e. *[John 4:21,23]- Jesus saith unto her, Woman, believe me, the hour cometh, when ye shall neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father. But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.*
  - f. *[Romans 8:37-38]- Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,*
16. O despairing souls, to all your former sins do not add this—of making light and slight of the blood of Christ.
- a. *[Exodus 12:7]- And they shall take of the blood, and strike it on the two side posts and on the upper door post of the houses, wherein they shall eat it.*

17. O despairing souls that God has brought some out of the very gulf of despair, out of the very belly of hell; and therefore you may hope that your sins, which are your present burden, shall not be your future ruin.
  - a. *[Psalm 77:2,10,13]- In the day of my trouble I sought the Lord: my sore ran in the night, and ceased not: my soul refused to be comforted. And I said, This is my infirmity: but I will remember the years of the right hand of the most High. Thy way, O God, is in the sanctuary: who is so great a God as our God?*
  - b. *[Psalm 88:3,6-7,14-16]- For my soul is full of troubles: and my life draweth nigh unto the grave. Thou hast laid me in the lowest pit, in darkness, in the deeps. Thy wrath lieth hard upon me, and thou hast afflicted me with all thy waves. Selah. LORD, why castest thou off my soul? why hidest thou thy face from me? I am afflicted and ready to die from my youth up: while I suffer thy terrors I am distracted. Thy fierce wrath goeth over me; thy terrors have cut me off.*
  - c. *[Psalm 88:1]- O lord God of my salvation, I have cried day and night before thee:*
  - d. *[Jonah 2:4]- Then I said, I am cast out of thy sight; yet I will look again toward thy holy temple.*
  - e. *[Revelation 2:17]- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.*
- B. Entering into the lists of dispute with Satan about those things that are above their reach.
  1. *[1 Samuel 23:16]- And Jonathan Saul's son arose, and went to David into the wood, and strengthened his hand in God.*
  2. *[Judges 15:13-14]- And they spake unto him, saying, No; but we will bind thee fast, and deliver thee into their hand: but surely we will not kill thee. And they bound him with two new cords, and brought him up from the rock. And when he came unto Lehi, the Philistines shouted against him: and the Spirit of the LORD came mightily upon him, and the cords that were upon his arms became as flax that was burnt with fire, and his bands loosed from off his hands.*
  3. *[Deuteronomy 29:29]- The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.*
  4. *[John 8:44]- Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.*
  5. *[Job 11:18-20]- And thou shalt be secure, because there is hope; yea, thou shalt dig about thee, and thou shalt take thy rest in safety. Also thou shalt lie down, and none shall make thee afraid; yea, many shall make suit unto thee. But the eyes of the wicked shall fail, and they shall not escape, and their hope shall be as the giving up of the ghost.*
- C. The lack of a thorough search and examination of their own souls, and of what God has done and is a-doing in them.
  1. *[Proverbs 2:3-5]- Yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice for understanding; If thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures; Then shalt thou understand the fear of the LORD, and find the knowledge of God.*
  2. *[2 Corinthians 13:5]- Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?*
  3. *[Matthew 12:20]- A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory.*
- D. Their mistakes about the work of grace.
  1. *[Mark 9:24]- And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief.*

- E. Their grieving and vexing the Spirit of grace
1. By not hearkening to his voice.
  2. By refusing his counsel.
  3. By stopping the ear.
  4. By throwing water upon that fire he kindles in their souls.
  5. By attributing that to the Spirit, what is to be attributed to men's own passions and distempers, and to the prince of darkness and his demons.
  6. *[Lamentations 1:16]- For these things I weep; mine eye, mine eye runneth down with water, because the comforter that should relieve my soul is far from me: my children are desolate, because the enemy prevailed.*
  7. *[1 John 3:19]- And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him.*
  8. *[Isaiah 63:10]- But they rebelled, and vexed his Holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them.*
- F. Doubting souls making their sense, reason, and feeling the judges of their spiritual conditions.
1. *"Reason's arm is too short to reach this jewel, assurance."*
  2. *[Genesis 31:5]- And said unto them, I see your father's countenance, that it is not toward me as before; but the God of my father hath been with me.*
  3. *[John 12:48]- He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day.*
  4. *[Isaiah 8:20]- To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.*
  5. *[Psalm 119:24]- Thy testimonies also are my delight and my counselors.*
- G. Men's remissness, carelessness, and laziness in religious services, and in the exercise of their graces.
1. *[John 14:21-23]- He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. Judas saith unto him, not Iscariot, Lord, how is it that thou wilt manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world? Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.*
  2. *[2 Peter 1:10-11]- Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.*
  3. *[Romans 12:11]- Not slothful in business; fervent in spirit; serving the Lord;*
  4. *[Matthew 18:10]- Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.*
  5. *[Proverbs 2:4-6]- If thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures; Then shalt thou understand the fear of the LORD, and find the knowledge of God. For the LORD giveth wisdom: out of his mouth cometh knowledge and understanding.*
  6. *"Elijah prayed earnestly, or as it is in the Greek, "He prayed in prayer," and God answered him."*
  7. *"...cease complaining of the lack of assurance, and be no more formal, slight, and superficial in pious services—but stir up yourselves, and put out all your might and strength in holy actions, and you shall experimentally find that it will not be long before you shall have such good news from heaven, as will fill you with joy unspeakable, and full of glory."*
- H. Men living in the neglect of some ordinance, or in the omission of some pious duties.
1. *"Some there are, who are all ear, all for hearing; and others there are, who are all tongue, all for speaking and praying; and others there are, who are all eye, all for believing, all for*

*searching, all for inquiring into this and that; and others there are, who are all hand, all for receiving the Lord's supper, etc'*

2. *[Revelation 2:17]- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.*
  3. *[Deuteronomy 23:3-4]- An Ammonite or Moabite shall not enter into the congregation of the LORD; even to their tenth generation shall they not enter into the congregation of the LORD for ever: Because they met you not with bread and with water in the way, when ye came forth out of Egypt; and because they hired against thee Balaam the son of Beor of Pethor of Mesopotamia, to curse thee.*
  4. *[Matthew 25:41-46]- Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels: For I was an hungred, and ye gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink: I was a stranger, and ye took me not in: naked, and ye clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not. Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungred, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee? Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye did it not to one of the least of these, ye did it not to me. And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal.*
  5. *[Nehemiah 8:9]- And Nehemiah, which is the Tirshatha, and Ezra the priest the scribe, and the Levites that taught the people, said unto all the people, This day is holy unto the LORD your God; mourn not, nor weep. For all the people wept, when they heard the words of the law.*
  6. *[Isaiah 60:20]- Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the LORD shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.*
  7. *[Leviticus 26:6]- And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land.*
  8. *[Proverbs 3:17]- Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.*
  9. *[Psalm 65:11-12]- Thou crownest the year with thy goodness; and thy paths drop fatness. They drop upon the pastures of the wilderness: and the little hills rejoice on every side.*
  10. *[Psalm 63:5]- My soul shall be satisfied as with marrow and fatness; and my mouth shall praise thee with joyful lips:*
  11. *[Isaiah 64:5]- Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.*
- I. An immoderate love of the world.
1. *[Matthew 19:23-24]- Then said Jesus unto his disciples, Verily I say unto you, That a rich man shall hardly enter into the kingdom of heaven. And again I say unto you, It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God.*
  2. *[Habakkuk 2:6]- Shall not all these take up a parable against him, and a taunting proverb against him, and say, Woe to him that increaseth that which is not his! how long? and to him that ladeth himself with thick clay!*
  3. *[Genesis 13:2]- And Abram was very rich in cattle, in silver, and in gold.*
  4. *[Proverbs 23:5]- Wilt thou set thine eyes upon that which is not? for riches certainly make themselves wings; they fly away as an eagle toward heaven.*
  5. *[Hebrews 12:16-17]- Lest there be any fornicator, or profane person, as Esau, who for one morsel of meat sold his birthright. For ye know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected: for he found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears.*

- J. The secret cherishing and running out of their hearts, to some bosom, darling sin.
1. *[Genesis 19:20]- Behold now, this city is near to flee unto, and it is a little one: Oh, let me escape thither, (is it not a little one?) and my soul shall live.*
  2. *[Psalm 85:8]- I will hear what God the LORD will speak: for he will speak peace unto his people, and to his saints: but let them not turn again to folly.*
  3. *[Hebrews 12:1]- Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,*
  4. Motives to provoke you to put out all your strength and might against bosom sins.
    - a. This will be a strong and choice demonstration and evidence of the sincerity and uprightness of your hearts.
      - 1.) There is no hypocrite in the world, but does dandle and dally with some bosom sin or other.
        - a.) *[Job 20:12-16]- Though wickedness be sweet in his mouth, though he hide it under his tongue; Though he spare it, and forsake it not; but keep it still within his mouth: Yet his meat in his bowels is turned, it is the gall of asps within him. He hath swallowed down riches, and he shall vomit them up again: God shall cast them out of his belly.*
      - 2.) *Trample upon your Delilahs!*
        - a.) *[2 Corinthians 1:12]- For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.*
        - b.) *Sincerity is the very queen of virtues; she holds the throne, and will be sure to keep it. Yes, the very sight of it in the soul makes a man sit cheerful and thankful, Noah-like, in the midst of all tempests and storms.*
      - 3.) *Look! As the playing with a bosom sin speaks out hypocrisy, so the mortifying of a bosom sin speaks out sincerity of soul!*
    - b. The conquest of their darling sins will render the conquests of other sins easy.
      - 1.) *[1 Samuel 17:51-52]- Therefore David ran, and stood upon the Philistine, and took his sword, and drew it out of the sheath thereof, and slew him, and cut off his head therewith. And when the Philistines saw their champion was dead, they fled. And the men of Israel and of Judah arose, and shouted, and pursued the Philistines, until thou come to the valley, and to the gates of Ekron. And the wounded of the Philistines fell down by the way to Shaaraim, even unto Gath, and unto Ekron.*
      - 2.) *[Zechariah 4:7]- Who art thou, O great mountain? before Zerubbabel thou shalt become a plain: and he shall bring forth the headstone thereof with shoutings, crying, Grace, grace unto it.*
      - 3.) *[2 Samuel 18:14]- Then said Joab, I may not tarry thus with thee. And he took three darts in his hand, and thrust them through the heart of Absalom, while he was yet alive in the midst of the oak.*
    - c. Consider the very great damage that your souls have *already* sustained by your bosom sins.
      - 1.) *“Saul, by casting an amorous eye upon Agag, lost his crown and kingdom. Samson, by dallying with his Delilah, lost his strength, sight, light, liberty, and life.”*
      - 2.) *“What are these losses to your loss of spiritual strength, to your loss of communion with God, to your loss of the Spirit of light, life, liberty, and glory; to your loss of joy unspeakable, and peace which passes all understanding; and to your loss of those fresh and sparkling hopes of glory, which were once sparkling in your bosom?”*



- 3.) *“There are many, who are so bewitched to some Cleopatra, to some darling sin or other—that they pursue the enjoyment of them to the loss of God, Christ, heaven, and their souls forever!”*
- d. The conquest and effectual mortifying of one bosom sin, will yield a Christian more glorious joy, comfort, and peace—than ever he has found in the gratifying and committing of all other sins.
- 1.) *If there were the least real joy in sin, there could be no hell-torments, where men shall most totally sin, and be most totally tormented with their sin.*
  - 2.) *Ah! doubting Christians, as ever you would have good days, as ever you would walk in the light, as ever you would, like the angels, have always harps in your hands, and hallelujahs in your mouths—be restless, until in the spirit and power of Jesus, you have brought under control, that sin which sticks so close unto you.*
  - 3.) *Remember this, nothing below the conquest of bosom sins can make a jubilee in the heart. It is not a man's whining and complaining over sin—but his mortifying of sin, which will make his life a paradise of pleasure.*
  - 4.) *If you like the wages, then take your course, and dally with sin still; if otherwise, then sacrifice your Isaac!*
  - 5.) *The leper under the law was still to keep his hair shaved. So should we be still a-cutting and shaving, that though the roots of sin remain, yet they may not grow and sprout.*
    - a.) ***[Leviticus 14:5]- And the priest shall command that one of the birds be killed in an earthen vessel over running water:***
- e. It is your duty and glory to do that every day—which you would willingly do upon a dying day.
- 1.) *Ah! doubting souls, you would not for all the world gratify your bosom sins upon a dying day; and will you gratify them on other days, which, for anything you know to the contrary, may prove your dying day? Thrice happy is that soul who labours with all his might to do that at first, which he would gladly do at last; who does that on every day; which he would give a thousand worlds to do on a dying day.*
- f. Until this is done, fears and doubts will still haunt the soul;
- 1.) *The hugging of sin in a corner will raise such a dust in the soul, that it will not be able to see these pearls of glory sparkling and shining. Until this is done, doubting souls, you will be but spiritual babes and dwarfs. The hankering of the soul after sin, is the casting of water upon the Spirit; it is the laming of grace, it is the clipping the wings of faith and prayer.*
  - 2.) *Sin is the soul's sickness, the soul's weakness. If the body is weak and diseased, it grows not. Sin is poison, which turns all nourishment into corruption, and so hinders the growth of the soul in grace and holiness.*
  - 3.) *If there is but one crack in the honey-jar, there the wasp will be buzzing; and where there is but some one sin favoured, there Satan will be tempting and upbraiding.*
  - 4.) **QUESTION.** What course must we take to bring under our darling sins, to get off our golden fetters, to get out of these silken snares?
    - a.) **Answer 1:** If ever you would have mastery over this or that bosom sin—then engage all your power and might against your bosom sin, draw up your spiritual forces, and engage them wholly against that sin which does so easily beset you.
      - 1.) ***[2 Chronicles 18:30]- Now the king of Syria had commanded the captains of the chariots that were with him, saying, Fight ye not with small or great, save only with the king of Israel.***
      - 2.) *“When there is no hope of curing, men must fall a-cutting.”*

- 3.) *[1 Samuel 15:33]- And Samuel said, As thy sword hath made women childless, so shall thy mother be childless among women. And Samuel hewed Agag in pieces before the LORD in Gilgal.*
  - 4.) *"You must pursue your bosom sins to the death—or they will be the death of your souls!"*
- b.) Answer 2: Labour to be most eminent and excellent in that particular grace, which is most opposite to a man's bosom sin.
    - 1.) *"As when one bucket of a well goes up—the other goes down. Just so, when grace gets up—sin goes down; when grace flourishes—sin withers."*
  - c.) Answer 3: Look upon bosom sins now, as they will appear to us at last.
    - 1.) *"Ah! souls, of all unpardoned sins, your bosom sins will be presented by God, conscience, and Satan at last—as the most filthy and ugly, as the most terrible and dreadful."*
    - 2.) *[Job 20:27-29]- The heaven shall reveal his iniquity; and the earth shall rise up against him. The increase of his house shall depart, and his goods shall flow away in the day of his wrath. This is the portion of a wicked man from God, and the heritage appointed unto him by God.*
  - d.) Answer 4: Apply yourselves to extraordinary means, as fasting and prayer, etc.
    - 1.) *[Matthew 17:19-21]- Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? And Jesus said unto them, Because of your unbelief: for verily I say unto you, If ye have faith as a grain of mustard seed, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place; and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you. Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.*
    - 2.) *[Colossians 2:14-15]- Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross; And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.*
  - e.) Answer 5: Keep away from all those occasions, which tend to lead you to the gratifying of them.
    - 1.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:22]- Abstain from all appearance of evil.*
    - 2.) *[Jude 23]- And others save with fear, pulling them out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.*
    - 3.) *[Genesis 39:10]- And it came to pass, as she spake to Joseph day by day, that he hearkened not unto her, to lie by her, or to be with her.*
    - 4.) *[Job 31:1]- I made a covenant with mine eyes; why then should I think upon a maid?*
    - 5.) *[Psalm 26:4-6]- I have not sat with vain persons, neither will I go in with dissemblers. I have hated the congregation of evil doers; and will not sit with the wicked. I will wash mine hands in innocency: so will I compass thine altar, O LORD:*

V. Several motives to provoke Christians to be restless until they have obtained a well-grounded assurance of their eternal happiness and blessedness.

A. That many are now dropped into hell who have formerly presumed of their going to heaven.

1. *[Matthew 7:22,26-27]- Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand: And the rain descended,*

*and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell: and great was the fall of it.*

2. *[Matthew 25:10-12]- And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut. Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not.*
3. Men are naturally prone to flatter themselves that their sins are not sins, when indeed they are; and that they are but small sins, when they are great and grievous.
4. *[Isaiah 40:27]- Why sayest thou, O Jacob, and speakest, O Israel, My way is hid from the LORD, and my judgment is passed over from my God?*
5. *[Deuteronomy 29:19]- And it come to pass, when he heareth the words of this curse, that he bless himself in his heart, saying, I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of mine heart, to add drunkenness to thirst:*
6. *[Proverbs 30:12]- There is a generation that are pure in their own eyes, and yet is not washed from their filthiness.*
7. *[Revelation 3:17-18]- Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked: I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*
8. *[Micah 3:11]- The heads thereof judge for reward, and the priests thereof teach for hire, and the prophets thereof divine for money: yet will they lean upon the LORD, and say, Is not the LORD among us? none evil can come upon us.*
9. "I have read of a madman at Athens, who laid claim to every rich ship which came into the harbour, whereas he was poor, and had no part in any. Ah! this age is full of such mad souls, who lay claim to God and Christ, and the promises and gospel privileges, and all the glory of another world—when they are poor, and blind, and miserable, and wretched, and naked, when they are Christless and graceless, etc."
10. *[Matthew 25:21,23]- His lord said unto him, Well done, thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord. His lord said unto him, Well done, good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord.*

B. That there are a great many soul flatterers, soul-deceivers, and soul-cheaters in the world.

1. "Ah! what multitudes are there, that to some bleary eyes appear as angels of light, and yet in their principles and practices are but servants to the prince of darkness, labouring with all their might to make proselytes for hell,"
2. *[Matthew 23:15]- Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye compass sea and land to make one proselyte, and when he is made, ye make him twofold more the child of hell than yourselves.*
3. *[Matthew 24:23-24]- Then if any man shall say unto you, Lo, here is Christ, or there; believe it not. For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.*
4. *[1 Corinthians 3:15]- If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.*
5. "Smooth talk often proves sweet poison."
6. *[Matthew 7:24-25]- Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock: And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock.*
7. *[Revelation 3:11]- Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.*

- C. A well-grounded assurance of your happiness and blessedness will ease you, and free you of a threefold burden. From a burden of cares, fears, and doubts.
1. The burden of cares.
    - a. *[Matthew 13:22]- He also that received seed among the thorns is he that heareth the word; and the care of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches, choke the word, and he becometh unfruitful.*
  2. The burden of fears.
    - a. *[Psalm 23:3]- He restoreth my soul: he leadeth me in the paths of righteousness for his name's sake.*
    - b. *[Genesis 21:16]- And she went, and sat her down over against him a good way off, as it were a bow shot: for she said, Let me not see the death of the child. And she sat over against him, and lift up her voice, and wept.*
  3. The burden of doubts.
    - a. That doubts are bred and fed by ignorance and unbelief, and therefore are sinful;
    - b. That they rob the soul of all joy, comfort, and contentment;
    - c. They render men babes in Christianity;
    - d. They throw reproach upon God, Christ, and the promises;
    - e. They give Satan the greatest advantage against us.
    - f. *[Luke 24:14-15]- And they talked together of all these things which had happened. And it came to pass, that, while they communed together and reasoned, Jesus himself drew near, and went with them.*
    - g. *[John 20:13-16]- And they say unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? She saith unto them, Because they have taken away my LORD, and I know not where they have laid him. And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Jesus standing, and knew not that it was Jesus. Jesus saith unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? whom seekest thou? She, supposing him to be the gardener, saith unto him, Sir, if thou have borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him, and I will take him away. Jesus saith unto her, Mary. She turned herself, and saith unto him, Rabboni; which is to say, Master.*
  4. *"The sum of all is this, as you would be rid of your burden of cares, your burden of fears, and your burden of doubts, get a well-grounded assurance of your happiness and blessedness; but if you are in love with your burdens, then neglect but the making of your calling and election sure, and you shall certainly make sure your burdens; they shall rise with you, and walk with you, and lie down with you, until they make your lives a hell."*
- D. Consider that Satan will labour with all his arts and deceits, with all his power and might, to keep you from attaining a well-grounded assurance of your happiness and blessedness.
- E. A well-grounded assurance is a jewel of that incomparable value.
1. *[Isaiah 45:19]- I have not spoken in secret, in a dark place of the earth: I said not unto the seed of Jacob, Seek ye me in vain: I the LORD speak righteousness, I declare things that are right.*
  2. *[Psalm 19:11]- Moreover by them is thy servant warned: and in keeping of them there is great reward.*
  3. Ah! doubting souls, pray hard, pull hard, work hard for assurance; the pay will answer the pains. Christ will, sooner or later, say to you, as the king of Israel said to the king of Syria,
    - a. *[1 Kings 20:4]- And the king of Israel answered and said, My lord, O king, according to thy saying, I am thine, and all that I have.*
    - b. *[Matthew 25:40-41]- And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me. Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels:*

- c. *[Revelation 3:11-12]- Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown. Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my new name.*
  4. "How sweet was it to me, to be suddenly without those sweet earthly vanities. And those things which I was afraid to lose—with joy I let go; for you who are the true and only sweetness, did cast out those from me, and instead of them did enter in yourself—who is more delightful than all pleasure, and more clear than all light." - Augustine
  5. *[Luke 2:30]- For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,*
- F. Consider what labour and pains worldlings take to obtain the vain things of this life.
1. *[Matthew 6:19-20]- Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and where thieves break through and steal: But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal:*
  2. "The laborious, the active Christian, is tempted but by one devil; but the idle, slothful Christian, is tempted by all devils. It is very sad, when worldlings are a-reaping; that saints as to spirituals, should be slumbering and sleeping."
- G. That assurance will enable you to bear a burden, without a burden.
1. *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
  2. *[2 Corinthians 5:8]- We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.*
  3. *[2 Corinthians 6:8-11]- By honour and dishonour, by evil report and good report: as deceivers, and yet true; As unknown, and yet well known; as dying, and, behold, we live; as chastened, and not killed; As sorrowful, yet alway rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and yet possessing all things. O ye Corinthians, our mouth is open unto you, our heart is enlarged.*
  4. Assurance makes heavy afflictions light, long afflictions short, bitter afflictions sweet.
    - a. *[2 Corinthians 4:16-18]- For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day. For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory; While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.*
    - b. *[Job 7:20]- I have sinned; what shall I do unto thee, O thou preserver of men? why hast thou set me as a mark against thee, so that I am a burden to myself?*
  5. Assurance fits a man's heart to his condition, and when a man's heart is fitted to his condition, nothing proves a burden to him.
- H. Particular commands of God, whereby he engages Christians to get assurance.
1. *[2 Peter 1:10]- Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall:*
  2. *[2 Corinthians 13:5]- Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?*
  3. *[Hebrews 6:11]- And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end:*
  4. "The saints in heaven have a happy necessity of obeying God always; but we have an unhappy necessity of disobeying continually"

5. *“Christians! you should tell your souls that the commands of God bind directly and immediately, that they bind absolutely and universally.”*
  6. *“It is very sad to consider that many who complain much of the lack of assurance, should make so little care and conscience of those commands of God, which require them to get assurance.”*
- I. You cannot gratify Satan more, nor injure yourselves more, than by living without assurance.
1. *[Zechariah 3:1-2]- And he shewed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the LORD, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him. And the LORD said unto Satan, The LORD rebuke thee, O Satan; even the LORD that hath chosen Jerusalem rebuke thee: is not this a brand plucked out of the fire?*
  2. *[Matthew 4:8]- Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them;*
  3. Have you not often found him a lion and a serpent, a tempter and a deceiver, a liar and a murderer?
    - a. *[1 Thessalonians 2:18]- Wherefore we would have come unto you, even I Paul, once and again; but Satan hindered us.*
  4. *“He who lives without assurance, lives without a comfortable fruition of God, and so gratifies Satan. He who lives without assurance, lives upon some creature enjoyment more than upon God, and so gratifies Satan. He who lives without assurance, lives not like the beloved of God, and so gratifies Satan. He who lives without assurance is very apt to gratify Satan, sometimes by complying with him, sometimes by following after him, and sometimes by acting his part for him.”*
  5. In the point of comfort and joy, you wrong your own souls.
  6. In the point of peace and content, you wrong your own souls.
  7. In the point of boldness and confidence, you wrong your own souls.
  8. *[Song of Solomon 8:6]- Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love is strong as death; jealousy is cruel as the grave: the coals thereof are coals of fire, which hath a most vehement flame.*
- J. Consider the sweet profit and glorious advantage which will redound to you by gaining assurance.
1. It will bring down heaven into your bosoms; it will give you a possession of heaven, on this side heaven.
    - a. *[Hebrews 11:1]- Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.*
  2. Assurance will exceedingly sweeten all the changes of this life.
    - a. *[2 Corinthians 4:16-18]- For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day. For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory; While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.*
    - b. *[Habakkuk 3:17-19]- Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls: Yet I will rejoice in the LORD, I will joy in the God of my salvation. The LORD God is my strength, and he will make my feet like hinds' feet, and he will make me to walk upon mine high places. To the chief singer on my stringed instruments.*
  3. Assurance will keep the heart from an inordinate running out after the world, and the glory thereof.
    - a. *[Hebrews 11:24-27]- By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater*

*riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward. By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.*

- b. *[2 Corinthians 12:1-3]- It is not expedient for me doubtless to glory. I will come to visions and revelations of the Lord. I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;)*
  - c. *[Romans 8:38]- For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,*
  - d. *[Galatians 6:14]- But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.*
  - e. *"The loadstone cannot draw the iron when the diamond is in presence; no more cannot the vanities of this world draw the soul after them, when assurance, that choice pearl of price, is in presence."*
  - f. *"I have read of Lazarus, than after he was raised from the grave, he was never seen to smile. The assurance that he had of more glorious things, did deaden his heart to the things of this world; he saw nothing in them worthy of a smile."*
4. Assurance will exceedingly heighten you in your communion with God, and it will exceedingly sweeten your communion with God.
  - a. *[1 John 3:2]- Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.*
  - b. *[Song of Solomon 2:16]- My beloved is mine, and I am his: he feedeth among the lilies.*
  - c. *[Song of Solomon 1:13]- A bundle of myrrh is my well-beloved unto me; he shall lie all night betwixt my breasts.*
  - d. *[Song of Solomon 7:5]- Thine head upon thee is like Carmel, and the hair of thine head like purple; the king is held in the galleries.*
  - e. *[Song of Solomon 2:6]- His left hand is under my head, and his right hand doth embrace me.*
5. Assurance will be a choice preservative to keep you from backsliding from God and his ways.
  - a. *[Galatians 5:1]- Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage.*
  - b. *[2 Timothy 2:3]- Thou therefore endure hardness, as a good soldier of Jesus Christ.*
  - c. *[2 Peter 1:10-11]- Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.*
  - d. *[2 Peter 2:3]- And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not.*
6. Assurance will very much embolden the soul with God.
  - a. *[Hebrews 10:22]- Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.*
  - b. *[Hebrews 12:12]- Wherefore lift up the hands which hang down, and the feeble knees;*
7. Assurance will sweeten the thoughts of death—and all the aches, pains, weaknesses, sicknesses, and diseases—which are the forerunners of death;
  - a. *"It will make a man sick of his absence from Christ. It makes a man smile upon the king of terrors; it makes a man laugh at the shaking of the spear, at the noise of the battle, at the garments of the warriors rolled in blood. It made the martyrs to desire the lions, to dare*

*and tire their persecutors, to kiss the stake, to sing and clap their hands in the flames, to tread upon hot burning coals, as upon beds of roses.”*

- b. *[1 Corinthians 15:55-57]- O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.*
  - c. *[Philippians 1:23]- For I am in a strait betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better:*
  - d. *[Song of Solomon 8:14]- Make haste, my beloved, and be thou like to a roe or to a young hart upon the mountains of spices.*
  - e. *[Revelation 22:20]- He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.*
8. Assurance will very much sweeten that little oil which is in the cruse, and that handful of meal, which is in the barrel.
  - a. *[1 Kings 17:12]- And she said, As the LORD thy God liveth, I have not a cake, but an handful of meal in a barrel, and a little oil in a cruse: and, behold, I am gathering two sticks, that I may go in and dress it for me and my son, that we may eat it, and die.*
  - b. *[Daniel 1:8,12]- But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself. Prove thy servants, I beseech thee, ten days; and let them give us pulse to eat, and water to drink.*
  - c. *[Luke 16:20]- And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores,*
  - d. *[Genesis 28:18]- And Jacob rose up early in the morning, and took the stone that he had put for his pillows, and set it up for a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it.*
  - e. *[Amos 6:4]- That lie upon beds of ivory, and stretch themselves upon their couches, and eat the lambs out of the flock, and the calves out of the midst of the stall;*
  - f. *[Job 20:22]- In the fulness of his sufficiency he shall be in straits: every hand of the wicked shall come upon him.*
  - g. *[Exodus 15:23-25]- And when they came to Marah, they could not drink of the waters of Marah, for they were bitter: therefore the name of it was called Marah. And the people murmured against Moses, saying, What shall we drink? And he cried unto the LORD; and the LORD shewed him a tree, which when he had cast into the waters, the waters were made sweet: there he made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there he proved them,*
  - h. *A believer knows, that his little mercies are from great love;*
  - i. *A believer knows, that they are pledges of greater mercies;*
  - j. *A believer knows, that his blessings are blessed unto him;*
  - k. *A believer knows, that they shall not at last be witnesses against him.*
9. Assurance will make a man very angelical.
  - a. *[Psalm 34:7]- The angel of the LORD encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.*
  - b. *“Ah, Christians! if ever you would act as angels in this world, get an assurance of another world; then you shall be dumb no more, nor dull no more—but be active and lively, like those whose hopes and whose hearts are in heaven.”*
10. Assurance will sweeten Christ, and the precious things of Christ, to your soul.
  - a. *“Assurance will also exceedingly sweeten your behaviour to all who bear the image of Christ. Nothing will make men bear with those weak saints, whose light is not so clear as yours, whose parts are not so strong as yours, whose enjoyments are not so high as yours, whose judgments are not so well informed as yours, whose consciences are not so well satisfied as yours, and whose lives are not so amiable as yours.”*



- 49

- C. Be kind to the Spirit, hear his voice, and follow his counsel, live up to his laws.
1. *[Romans 8:26]- Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.*
  2. *[John 14:26]- But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.*
  3. *[Ephesians 1:13]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,*
  4. *[Isaiah 63:10]- But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them.*
  5. *[Ephesians 4:30]- And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption.*
  6. *“Ah, Christians! the way to assurance is not to sit down sighing and complaining of the lack of assurance—but it lies in your eyeing of the Holy Spirit, in your complying with the Spirit, in your cleaving to the Spirit, in your following of the Spirit, in your welcoming of the Spirit, and in your honouring and obeying of the Spirit.”*
  7. *[1 Samuel 21:9]- And the priest said, The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom thou slewest in the valley of Elah, behold, it is here wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod: if thou wilt take that, take it: for there is no other save that here. And David said, There is none like that; give it me.*
  8. *““If there be any way to heaven on horseback, it is by prayer;” so say I, if there be any way to assurance, it is by being fearful to offend, and careful to please the Spirit of the Lord, whose office it is to witness to poor souls the remission of their sins, and the salvation of their souls.””*
- D. Be sincere; be diligent and constant in assuring ordinances.
1. *[Isaiah 64:5]- Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.*
  2. *[Revelation 2:1]- Unto the angel of the church of Ephesus write; These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks;*
  3. *[Proverbs 8:34-35]- Blessed is the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors. For whoso findeth me findeth life, and shall obtain favour of the LORD.*
  4. *“That comfort and assurance which flows not in through the golden pipes of the sanctuary, will not better the soul, nor long abide with the soul; it will be as the morning dew, and as the flowers of the field which soon fade away.”*
  5. *[Hosea 6:4]- O Ephraim, what shall I do unto thee? O Judah, what shall I do unto thee? for your goodness is as a morning cloud, and as the early dew it goeth away.*
  6. *[1 Peter 1:24]- For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:*
- E. To observe what gift of God there is in you, which brings you within the compass of the promises of eternal mercy.
1. No man can have any sure evidence to himself of his happiness and blessedness, from the promises of Scripture.
    - a. *[Isaiah 42:6]- I the LORD have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;*
    - b. *[Isaiah 49:8]- Thus saith the LORD, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;*

- c. *[Joel 2:28]- And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:*
  - d. *[Ezekiel 32:26-27]- There is Meshech, Tubal, and all her multitude: her graves are round about him: all of them uncircumcised, slain by the sword, though they caused their terror in the land of the living. And they shall not lie with the mighty that are fallen of the uncircumcised, which are gone down to hell with their weapons of war: and they have laid their swords under their heads, but their iniquities shall be upon their bones, though they were the terror of the mighty in the land of the living.*
  - e. *[Jeremiah 32:40]- And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from me.*
  - f. *[Hebrews 8:10-12]- For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people: And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest. For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.*
  - g. *[Isaiah 32:15]- Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest.*
  - h. *"Now God is free to make good these to whom he pleases; therefore he often steps over the rich and chooses the poor; he often steps over the learned, and chooses the ignorant; he often steps over the strong, and chooses the weak; he often steps over the noble, and chooses the vile; he often steps over the sweet nature, and chooses the wicked nature, etc., that no flesh may glory, and that all may shout out "Grace, grace!""*
  - i. *[1 Corinthians 1.25-29]-Because the foolishness of God is wiser than men; and the weakness of God is stronger than men. For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are called: But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty; And base things of the world, and things which are despised, hath God chosen, yea, and things which are not, to bring to nought things that are: That no flesh should glory in his presence.*
2. Though no man can have any sure evidence of his happiness and blessedness from the promises, because the promises do not describe the persons to whom salvation and all eternal blessings belong; yet these promises are of most choice and singular use.
- a. In that they discover to us that our salvation is only from free grace, and not from anything good in us or done by us.
  - b. They are a most sure and glorious foundation for the very worst of sinners to stay their filthy, guilty, wearied, burdened, perplexed souls upon. Seeing that God looks not for any penny or pennyworth, for any goodness or merit in the creature to draw his love—but he will justify, pardon, and save for his name's sake; seeing all the motives which move God to show mercy are in his own bosom; seeing they are all within doors, there is no reason why the vilest of sinners should sit down and say, 'There is no hope, there is no help,'
    - 1.) In that they discover to us that our salvation is only from free grace, and not from anything good in us or done by us.
    - 2.) They are a most sure and glorious foundation for the very worst of sinners to stay their filthy, guilty, wearied, burdened, perplexed souls upon.
      - a.) *[Isaiah 55:1-2]- Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness.*

- b.) *[Deuteronomy 7:7-8]- The LORD did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: But because the LORD loved you, and because he would keep the oath which he had sworn unto your fathers, hath the LORD brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.*
    - c.) *[Psalm 68:18]- Thou hast ascended on high, thou hast led captivity captive: thou hast received gifts for men; yea, for the rebellious also, that the LORD God might dwell among them.*
  - c. **Promises may, and doubtless often are, choice cordials to many precious souls, who perhaps have lost the sense and feeling of divine favour.**
    - 1.) Faith is a gift of God, which brings the soul within the promise of everlasting blessedness, as the Scripture does everywhere evidence.
      - a.) *[Mark 16:1]- And when the sabbath was past, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James, and Salome, had bought sweet spices, that they might come and anoint him.*
      - b.) *[John 3:15-16]- That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.*
      - c.) *[John 1:12]- But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:*
    - 2.) Waiting patiently on God is a gift, which brings you within the promise of everlasting happiness and blessedness.
      - a.) *[Isaiah 30:18]- And therefore will the LORD wait, that he may be gracious unto you, and therefore will he be exalted, that he may have mercy upon you: for the LORD is a God of judgment: blessed are all they that wait for him.*
      - b.) *[Romans 3:4]- God forbid: yea, let God be true, but every man a liar; as it is written, That thou mightest be justified in thy sayings, and mightest overcome when thou art judged.*
      - c.) *[Isaiah 64:4]- For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him.*
      - d.) *[Proverbs 8:34]- Blessed is the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors.*
      - e.) *[Isaiah 49:23]- And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.*
      - f.) *[Revelation 22:11-12]- He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy, let him be filthy still: and he that is righteous, let him be righteous still: and he that is holy, let him be holy still. And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.*
    - 3.) Hungering and Thirsting after righteousness is a gift which brings the soul within the compass of the promise of everlasting happiness and blessedness:
      - a.) *[Matthew 5:6]- Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.*
      - b.) *[Isaiah 44:2-5]- Thus saith the LORD that made thee, and formed thee from the womb, which will help thee; Fear not, O Jacob, my servant; and thou, Jesurun, whom I have chosen. For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring: And they shall spring up as among the grass, as willows by the*

*water courses. One shall say, I am the LORD's; and another shall call himself by the name of Jacob; and another shall subscribe with his hand unto the LORD, and surname himself by the name of Israel.*

- c.) *[Isaiah 35:6-7]- Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert. And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes.*
- d.) *[Psalm 107:9]- For he satisfieth the longing soul, and filleth the hungry soul with goodness.*
- e.) All real hungerings and thirstings after righteousness are earnest and vehement thirstings and longings.
  - 1.) *[Psalm 42:1-2]- As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God. My soul thirsteth for God, for the living God: when shall I come and appear before God?*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 119:20]- My soul breaketh for the longing that it hath unto thy judgments at all times.*
  - 3.) *"The Greeks derive their word for desire from a root that signifies to burn. Ah, Christians! real desires are burning desires; they set the soul all in a holy flame after God and Christ."*
- f.) All real hungerings in the soul after righteousness, arise from spiritual and heavenly considerations;
  - 1.) *[Psalm 63:1-4]- O God, thou art my God; early will I seek thee: my soul thirsteth for thee, my flesh longeth for thee in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is; To see thy power and thy glory, so as I have seen thee in the sanctuary. Because thy lovingkindness is better than life, my lips shall praise thee. Thus will I bless thee while I live: I will lift up my hands in thy name.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 27:4]- One thing have I desired of the LORD, that will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the LORD all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of the LORD, and to enquire in his temple.*
  - 3.) *[Phil 3:7-10]- But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ, And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith: That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;*
  - 4.) *[Psalm 145:19]- He will fulfil the desire of them that fear him: he also will hear their cry, and will save them.*
- g.) Real hungerings and thirstings after Christ and his righteousness, etc., will put the soul upon lively endeavors.
  - 1.) *[Isaiah 26:9]- With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee early: for when thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn righteousness.*
  - 2.) *"A thirsty man will not only long for drink—but labour for it; the condemned man will not only desire his pardon—but he will write, and entreat, and weep, and set this friend and that, to solicit for him; the covetous man does not only wish for wealth—but will rise early and go to bed late, he will turn every stone, and make attempts upon all hopeful opportunities, whereby he may fill his bags and fill his barns. Even so, all holy desires will put souls upon the use of the means, whereby the mercy desired may be gained. And thus to run, is to*

*attain; thus to will, is to work; thus to desire, is to do the will of our Father, who accepts of pence for pounds, of mites for millions."*

- 3.) *[Leviticus 2:2]- And he shall bring it to Aaron's sons the priests: and he shall take thereof his handful of the flour thereof, and of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof; and the priest shall burn the memorial of it upon the altar, to be an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the LORD:*
- 4.) *[Exodus 35:6]- And blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' hair,*
- 5.) *[2 Corinthians 8:12]- For if there be first a willing mind, it is accepted according to that a man hath, and not according to that he hath not.*

h.) Spiritual hungerings and thirstings are only satisfied with spiritual things.

- 1.) *[John 14:8]- Philip saith unto him, Lord, show us the Father, and it sufficeth us.*
- 2.) *[Psalm 63:5-6]- My soul shall be satisfied as with marrow and fatness; and my mouth shall praise thee with joyful lips: When I remember thee upon my bed, and meditate on thee in the night watches.*
- 3.) *[Psalm 65:4]- Blessed is the man whom thou choosest, and causest to approach unto thee, that he may dwell in thy courts: we shall be satisfied with the goodness of thy house, even of thy holy temple.*
- 4.) *"The rattle without the breast will not satisfy the child, the house without the husband will not satisfy the wife, the cabinet without the jewel will not satisfy the virgin, nor the world without Christ will not satisfy the soul."*
- 5.) *[Genesis 14:21]- And the king of Sodom said unto Abram, Give me the persons, and take the goods to thyself.*
- 6.) *[Proverbs 13:19]- The desire accomplished is sweet to the soul: but it is abomination to fools to depart from evil.*
- 7.) *"I have read of Darius, that when he fled from his enemy, and being in great thirst, he met with a dirty puddle of water, with carrion lying in it, and he sucked in and drank very heartily of it, and professed, "That it was the sweetest draught that ever he drunk in his life." Ah, how sweet then are those waters of life that are at God's right hand! How sweet are the droppings of God's honeycomb upon the hungry soul! Water out of the rock, and manna in the wilderness, was not so sweet to the hungry, thirsty Israelites—as spiritual answers and spiritual returns are to those who hunger and thirst after spiritual things."*

F. To be much, yes, to excel in those choice particular things which may clearly and fully difference and distinguish you, not only from the profane.

1. *[Ezekiel 24:21]- Speak unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will profane my sanctuary, the excellency of your strength, the desire of your eyes, and that which your soul pitieth; and your sons and your daughters whom ye have left shall fall by the sword.*
2. *[Ezekiel 33:31-32]- And they come unto thee as the people cometh, and they sit before thee as my people, and they hear thy words, but they will not do them: for with their mouth they shew much love, but their heart goeth after their covetousness. And, lo, thou art unto them as a very lovely song of one that hath a pleasant voice, and can play well on an instrument: for they hear thy words, but they do them not.*
3. *[Isaiah 1:11-16]- To what purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the LORD: I am full of the burnt offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he goats. When ye come to appear before me, who hath required this at your hand, to tread my courts? Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto me; the new moons and sabbaths, the calling of assemblies,*

*I cannot away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting. Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth: they are a trouble unto me; I am weary to bear them. And when ye spread forth your hands, I will hide mine eyes from you: yea, when ye make many prayers, I will not hear: your hands are full of blood. Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil;*

4. *[Zechariah 7:4-7]- Then came the word of the LORD of hosts unto me, saying, Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When ye fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh month, even those seventy years, did ye at all fast unto me, even to me? And when ye did eat, and when ye did drink, did not ye eat for yourselves, and drink for yourselves? Should ye not hear the words which the LORD hath cried by the former prophets, when Jerusalem was inhabited and in prosperity, and the cities thereof round about her, when men inhabited the south and the plain?*
5. *[Isaiah 58:1-3]- Cry aloud, spare not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and shew my people their transgression, and the house of Jacob their sins. Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their God: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to God. Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours.*
6. What are those choice particular things that may difference and distinguish Christ's true Nathanaels from all other people in the world?
  - a. A true Christian, in his constant course, labours in all duties and services to be approved and accepted of God.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 139:23-24]- Search me, O God, and know my heart: try me, and know my thoughts: And see if there be any wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting.*
    - 2.) *[John 21:15-17]- So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my lambs. He saith to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my sheep. He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me? And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep.*
    - 3.) *[2 Corinthians 5:9]- Wherefore we labour, that, whether present or absent, we may be accepted of him.*
    - 4.) *"They say of the nightingale, that when she is solitary in the woods, she is careless of her melody; but when she perceives that she has any auditors, or is near houses—then she composes herself more harmoniously and elegantly. Truly, this is the frame and temper of the best of hypocrites."*
  - b. He labours to get up to the very top of holiness; he labours to live up to his own principles.
    - 1.) *[Philippians 3:11]- If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 45:13]- The king's daughter is all glorious within: her clothing is of wrought gold.*
    - 3.) *[Numbers 14:24]- But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it.*
    - 4.) *[Revelations 14:4-5]- These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb. And in their mouth was found no guile: for they are without fault before the throne of God.*

- 5.) *[2 Corinthians 1:12]- For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.*
- 6.) *[1 Thessalonians 2:10]- Ye are witnesses, and God also, how holily and justly and unblameably we behaved ourselves among you that believe:*
- 7.) That their living up to their own principles, does best evidence Christ living in them, and their union with him.
  - a.) *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
- 8.) They know that it is not their profession—but living up to their principles, which will effectually stop the mouths, and convince the consciences of worldly men:
  - a.) *[1 Peter 2:15]- For so is the will of God, that with well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men:*
  - b.) *“There is no greater way in the world to still and silence wicked men, to make them dumb and speechless, to muzzle and tie up their mouths, as the Greek word notes—as by living up to your own principles. The lives of men convince more strongly than their words; the tongue persuades—but the life commands.”*
- 9.) They know by living up to their principles, they cast a general glory upon Christ and his ways. This makes Christ and his ways to be well thought on and well spoke on.
  - a.) *[Matthew 5:16]- Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.*
  - b.) *[1 Peter 2:11-12]- Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul; Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation.*
  - c.) *[2 Peter 1:5-13]- And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity. For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. Wherefore I will not be negligent to put you always in remembrance of these things, though ye know them, and be established in the present truth. Yea, I think it meet, as long as I am in this tabernacle, to stir you up by putting you in remembrance;*
- 10.) They know that the ready way, the only way to get and keep assurance, joy, peace, etc., is to live up to their principles.
- 11.) They know that by living below their own principles, or contrary to their own principles, they do but gratify Satan, and provoke wicked men to blaspheme that worthy name by which they are called; they know that by their not living up to their own principles, they do but multiply their own fears and doubts, and put a sword into the hand of conscience, and make sad work for future repentance.
  - a.) *[Genesis 28:12]- And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it.*



- b.) *[James 2:7]- Do not they blaspheme that worthy name by the which ye are called?*
- c. It is their greatest desire and endeavour that sin may be cured, rather than covered.
- 1.) *[Psalm 51:3]- For I acknowledge my transgressions: and my sin is ever before me.*
  - 2.) *[Daniel 9:5]- We have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments:*
  - 3.) *[Romans 7:23]- But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.*
  - 4.) *[Amos 2:13]- Behold, I am pressed under you, as a cart is pressed that is full of sheaves.*
  - 5.) *[Jeremiah 17:1]- The sin of Judah is written with a pen of iron, and with the point of a diamond: it is graven upon the table of their heart, and upon the horns of your altars;*
  - 6.) *[Romans 7:24]- O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death?*
  - 7.) *[Hosea 7:16]- They return, but not to the most High: they are like a deceitful bow: their princes shall fall by the sword for the rage of their tongue: this shall be their derision in the land of Egypt.*
  - 8.) *[Hosea 5:14-15]- For I will be unto Ephraim as a lion, and as a young lion to the house of Judah: I, even I, will tear and go away; I will take away, and none shall rescue him. I will go and return to my place, till they acknowledge their offence, and seek my face: in their affliction they will seek me early.*
  - 9.) *[Psalm 78:34-37]- When he slew them, then they sought him: and they returned and enquired early after God. And they remembered that God was their rock, and the high God their redeemer. Nevertheless they did flatter him with their mouth, and they lied unto him with their tongues. For their heart was not right with him, neither were they stedfast in his covenant.*
  - 10.) *"Sin is evil in the eye, worse in the tongue, worsen in the heart—but worst of all in the life."*
- d. Are not your souls taken with Christ as chief?
- 1.) *[Song of Solomon 5:10,16]- My beloved is white and ruddy, the chiefest among ten thousand. His mouth is most sweet: yea, he is altogether lovely. This is my beloved, and this is my friend, O daughters of Jerusalem.*
  - 2.) *[Proverbs 3:15]- She is more precious than rubies: and all the things thou canst desire are not to be compared unto her.*
  - 3.) *[Psalm 73:25-26]- Whom have I in heaven but thee? and there is none upon earth that I desire beside thee. My flesh and my heart faileth: but God is the strength of my heart, and my portion for ever.*
  - 4.) *[Philippians 3:7-8]- But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,*
  - 5.) *[Ephesians 1:21]- Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:*
  - 6.) *[Philippians 2:9]- Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:*
  - 7.) *"He lifts up Christ above all your duties, above all your privileges, above all your mercies, above all your graces, above all your contentments, above all your enjoyments; do not you thus lift up Jesus Christ?"*

- 8.) *[1 Peter 2:7]- Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,*
  - 9.) *[Song of Solomon 5:16]- His mouth is most sweet: yea, he is altogether lovely. This is my beloved, and this is my friend, O daughters of Jerusalem.*
  - 10.) *[John 6:26]- Jesus answered them and said, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Ye seek me, not because ye saw the miracles, but because ye did eat of the loaves, and were filled.*
  - 11.) *[Psalm 45:6-8]- Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre. Thou lovest righteousness, and hatest wickedness: therefore God, thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. All thy garments smell of myrrh, and aloes, and cassia, out of the ivory palaces, whereby they have made thee glad.*
- e. Are not your greatest and your hottest conflicts against inward pollutions, against those secret sins which are only obvious to the eye of God and your own souls?
- 1.) *[Romans 7:23]- But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 19:12]- Who can understand his errors? cleanse thou me from secret faults.*
  - 3.) *[2 Chronicles 32:26]- Notwithstanding Hezekiah humbled himself for the pride of his heart, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the wrath of the LORD came not upon them in the days of Hezekiah.*
- f. Are you not subject to Christ as a head?
- 1.) The members are willingly and sweetly subject to the head; their subjection is voluntary, not compulsory. It is so with a believing soul:
    - a.) *[Psalm 27:8]- When thou saidst, Seek ye my face; my heart said unto thee, Thy face, LORD, will I seek.*
    - b.) *[Psalm 110:3]- Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power, in the beauties of holiness from the womb of the morning: thou hast the dew of thy youth.*
    - c.) *[Acts 9:6]- And he trembling and astonished said, Lord, what wilt thou have me to do? And the Lord said unto him, Arise, and go into the city, and it shall be told thee what thou must do.*
    - d.) *[Acts 21:13]- Then Paul answered, What mean ye to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.*
  - 2.) The members are subject to the head universally; they do all the head enjoins. Their obedience is universal,
    - a.) In respect of the act of eschewing all evil, doing all good;
    - b.) In respect of the rule, the whole word of God;
    - c.) In respect of their general and particular calling.
    - d.) *[Luke 1:5-6]- There was in the days of Herod, the king of Judaea, a certain priest named Zacharias, of the course of Abia: and his wife was of the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elisabeth. And they were both righteous before God, walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless.*
    - e.) *[Acts 13:22]- And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.*
  - 3.) The members are subject to the head constantly, unweariedly.

- a.) *[Acts 24:16]- And herein do I exercise myself, to have always a conscience void to offence toward God, and toward men.*
- b.) *[Psalm 119:112]- I have inclined mine heart to perform thy statutes alway, even unto the end.*
- c.) Labour in all duties and services to approve your hearts to God?
- d.) Whether you do not endeavour to get up to the very top of holiness, and to live up to your own principles?
- e.) Whether it be not your greatest desire and endeavour that sin may be cured rather than covered?
- f.) Whether you are not taken with Christ as chief? whether you do not, in your judgments and affections, lift up Christ above all, as God the Father does?
- g.) Whether your greatest and hottest conflicts and combats be not against inward pollutions, against those secret stirrings and operations of sin, which are only obvious to the eye of God and your own souls?
- h.) Whether you do not, in respect of the general bent and frame of your hearts, subject to Christ as your head?
  - 1.) Freely and sweetly.
  - 2.) Universally, in one thing as well as another, without any exception or reservation.
  - 3.) Constantly and unwearily.
  - 4.) *[Isaiah 26:12]- LORD, thou wilt ordain peace for us: for thou also hast wrought all our works in us.*
- i.) That your estate is good; you have certainly a blessed interest in the Lord Jesus.
- j.) Know that it is no iniquity—but rather **your duty, for you to suck sweetness out of these honeycombs, and to look upon these things as infallible pledges and evidences of divine favour, and of your everlasting happiness and blessedness.**

G. To grow and increase more and more in grace.

- 1. *[2 Peter 1:5-11]- And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity. For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.*
- 2. *[Jeremiah 32:41]- Yea, I will rejoice over them to do them good, and I will plant them in this land assuredly with my whole heart and with my whole soul.*
- 3. *"If moral virtue," says Plato, 'could be seen with mortal eyes, it would soon draw all hearts to itself.' Oh how much the more should our hearts be drawn out after the highest measures of grace! the least grain of grace being more worth than all moral virtue."*

H. To take your hearts when they are in the best and most spiritual frame and temper God-wards, heaven-wards, and holiness-wards.

- 1. *[2 Corinthians 13:5]- Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?*
- 2. *[Psalm 85:8-9]- I will hear what God the LORD will speak: for he will speak peace unto his people, and to his saints: but let them not turn again to folly. Surely his salvation is nigh them that fear him; that glory may dwell in our land.*
- 3. *"I have read of one who was kept from destroying of himself, being much tempted by Satan unto suicide—by remembering that there was a time when he solemnly set himself in prayer and self-examination before the Lord, and made a diligent inquiry into his spiritual condition;*

*and in the close of that work, it was evidenced to him that his heart was upright with God, and this kept him from laying of violent hands upon himself. A good conscience is a thousand witnesses; therefore make much of its testimony."*

- I. Make a diligent inquiry whether you have those things which accompany eternal salvation:
  1. *[Hebrews 6:9]- But, beloved, we are persuaded better things of you, and things that accompany salvation, though we thus speak.*
  2. Knowledge.
    - a. *[John 17:3]- And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.*
    - b. *[1 John 5:20]- And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.*
    - c. *[2 Peter 1:3]- According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue:*
  3. Faith.
    - a. *[2 Thessalonians 2:13]- But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth:*
    - b. *[1 Peter 1:5]- Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.*
    - c. *[Hebrews 10:39]- But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.*
    - d. *[John 3:14-16]- And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up: That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.*
    - e. *[John 3:36]- He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.*
    - f. *[John 5:24]- Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.*
    - g. *[John 6:40,47]- And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day. Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.*
    - h. *[Mark 16:16]- He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.*
    - i. *[Acts 16:31]- And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.*
    - j. *[Romans 10:9]- That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.*
    - k. *[Isaiah 45:22]- Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else.*
    - l. *[Philippians 2:8]- And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.*
    - m. *[John 11:25-26]- Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live: And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?*
    - n. *[1 John 5:10]- He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son.*

4. Repentance.
  - a. *[2 Corinthians 7:10]- For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death.*
  - b. *[Jeremiah 4:14]- O Jerusalem, wash thine heart from wickedness, that thou mayest be saved. How long shall thy vain thoughts lodge within thee?*
  - c. *[Acts 11:18]- When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life.*
  - d. *[Matthew 18:3]- And said, Verily I say unto you, Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven.*
  - e. *[Acts 3:19]- Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.*
  - f. *"The very word repent was very displeasing to Luther until his conversion—but afterward he took delight in the work—to sorrow for his sin, and then rejoice in his sorrow."*
5. Obedience.
  - a. *[Hebrews 5:9]- And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;*
  - b. *[Psalm 50:23]- Whoso offereth praise glorifieth me: and to him that ordereth his conversation aright will I shew the salvation of God.*
6. Love.
  - a. *[2 Timothy 4:8]- Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
  - b. *[James 2:5]- Hearken, my beloved brethren, Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him?*
  - c. *[1 Corinthians 2:9]- But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.*
  - d. *[James 1:12]- Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.*
    - 1.) The perpetuity of that life the apostle speaks of, for a crown has neither beginning nor ending;
    - 2.) It notes plenty; the crown fetches a range on every side;
    - 3.) It notes dignity;
    - 4.) It notes majesty. Eternal life is a coronation day; it notes all joys, all delights; in a word, it notes all good, it notes all glory.
    - 5.) *[Matthew 19:29]- And every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life.*
7. Prayer.
  - a. *[Romans 10:10,13]- For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.*
  - b. *[Acts 2:21]- And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.*
  - c. *[Matthew 7:22]- Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works?*
8. Perseverance.
  - a. *[Matthew 10:22]- And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved.*

- b. *[Mark 13:13]- And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake: but he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.*
- c. *[Matthew 24:12-13]- And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.*
- d. *[Revelation 2:10]- Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.*
- e. *[Revelation 3:5]- He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.*

VII. Those things accompanying Salvation.

A. What knowledge that is, which accompanies salvation.

1. The first property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation is a working knowledge, an operative knowledge:
  - a. Working knowledge.
    - 1.) *[2 Corinthians 4:6]- For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.*
    - 2.) *[1 John 3:6]- Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.*
    - 3.) *[Romans 6:6]- Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.*
  - b. Operative knowledge
    - 1.) *[1 John 2:3-4]- And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments. He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.*
    - 2.) *[James 3:13,17]- Who is a wise man and endued with knowledge among you? let him shew out of a good conversation his works with meekness of wisdom. But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be intreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.*
  - c. That knowledge which is not operative and working, will only serve to guide souls to hell, and to double damn all who have it,
    - 1.) *[Matthew 23:14]- Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye devour widows' houses, and for a pretence make long prayer: therefore ye shall receive the greater damnation.*
2. The second property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation is transforming knowledge, it is metamorphosing knowledge.
  - a. *[2 Corinthians 3:18]- But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.*
  - b. Mere notional knowledge may make a man excellent at *praising* the glorious and worthy acts and virtues of Christ; but that transforming knowledge which accompanies salvation, will work a man divinely to *imitate* the glorious acts and virtues of Christ.
    - 1.) *[1 Peter 2:9]- But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;*
  - c. *[Acts 9:6]- And he trembling and astonished said, Lord, what wilt thou have me to do? And the Lord said unto him, Arise, and go into the city, and it shall be told thee what thou must do.*

- d. *[Luke 7:36-37]- And one of the Pharisees desired him that he would eat with him. And he went into the Pharisee's house, and sat down to meat. And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that Jesus sat at meat in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment,*
3. The third property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation is experimental knowledge. It is knowledge, which springs from a spiritual sense and taste of holy and heavenly things.
- a. *[Song of Solomon 1:2,13]- Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth: for thy love is better than wine. A bundle of myrrh is my well-beloved unto me; he shall lie all night betwixt my breasts.*
- b. *[Romans 7:24-25]- O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death? I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.*
- c. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
- d. *[Philippians 1:9]- And this I pray, that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and in all judgment;*
- e. *[Hebrews 5:14]- But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.*
- f. *[Matthew 25:11-12]- Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not.*
- g. *[Matthew 7:22]- Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works?*
- h. *[Psalm 27:4]- One thing have I desired of the LORD, that will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the LORD all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of the LORD, and to enquire in his temple.*
- i. *[Psalm 32:1-2]- Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered. Blessed is the man unto whom the LORD imputeth not iniquity, and in whose spirit there is no guile.*
- j. *[Proverbs 18:14]- The spirit of a man will sustain his infirmity; but a wounded spirit who can bear?*
- k. *[Psalm 51:17]- The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit: a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise.*
- l. *[2 Peter 1:4]- Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.*
- m. *[Psalm 4:6-7]- There be many that say, Who will shew us any good? LORD, lift thou up the light of thy countenance upon us. Thou hast put gladness in my heart, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased.*
- n. *[Psalm 48:10]- According to thy name, O God, so is thy praise unto the ends of the earth: thy right hand is full of righteousness.*
- o. *[John 16:7]- Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.*
- p. *[Lamentations 1:16]- For these things I weep; mine eye, mine eye runneth down with water, because the comforter that should relieve my soul is far from me: my children are desolate, because the enemy prevailed.*
- q. *[Isaiah 63:10-11]- But they rebelled, and vexed his Holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them. Then he remembered the days of old, Moses, and his people, saying, Where is he that brought them up out of the sea with the shepherd of his flock? where is he that put his holy Spirit within him?*
- r. *[Psalm 34:8]- O taste and see that the LORD is good: blessed is the man that trusteth in him.*

4. The fourth property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation is a heart-affecting knowledge. It affects the heart with Christ, and all spiritual things.
  - a. *[Song of Solomon 2:5]- Stay me with flagons, comfort me with apples: for I am sick of love.*
  - b. *[Psalm 73:25-26]- Whom have I in heaven but thee? and there is none upon earth that I desire beside thee. My flesh and my heart faileth: but God is the strength of my heart, and my portion for ever.*
  - c. *[Song of Solomon 5:10]- My beloved is white and ruddy, the chiefest among ten thousand.*
  - d. *[Galatians 6:14]- But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.*
  - e. *"...if your knowledge does not now affect your heart, it will at last with a witness afflict your heart; if it does not now endear Christ to you, it will at last the more provoke Christ against you; if it does not make all the things of Christ to be very precious in your eyes, it will at last make you the more vile in Christ's eyes! A little knowledge which divinely affects the heart, is infinitely better than a world of that theoretical knowledge which swims in the head—but never sinks down into the heart, to the bettering, to the warming, and to the affecting of it."*
  
5. The fifth property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation, is **a world-despising, a world-crucifying, and a world-forsaking** knowledge.
  - a. *[Galatians 6:14]- But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.*
  - b. *[Philippians 3:4-9]- Though I might also have confidence in the flesh. If any other man thinketh that he hath whereof he might trust in the flesh, I more: Circumcised the eighth day, of the stock of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, an Hebrew of the Hebrews; as touching the law, a Pharisee; Concerning zeal, persecuting the church; touching the righteousness which is in the law, blameless. But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ, And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:*
  - c. *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
  - d. *[Matthew 19:27-30]- Then answered Peter and said unto him, Behold, we have forsaken all, and followed thee; what shall we have therefore? And Jesus said unto them, Verily I say unto you, That ye which have followed me, in the regeneration when the Son of man shall sit in the throne of his glory, ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel. And every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life. But many that are first shall be last; and the last shall be first.*
  - e. *[Hebrews 11:24-26]- By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.*
  - f. *[Luke 19:7-10]- And when they saw it, they all murmured, saying, That he was gone to be guest with a man that is a sinner. And Zacchaeus stood, and said unto the Lord: Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have taken any thing from any man by false accusation, I restore him fourfold. And Jesus said unto him, This day*



*is salvation come to this house, forsomuch as he also is a son of Abraham. For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.*

- g. *[Romans 4:12,16]- And the father of circumcision to them who are not of the circumcision only, but who also walk in the steps of that faith of our father Abraham, which he had being yet uncircumcised. Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,*
  - h. *[Isaiah 30:22]- Ye shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth; thou shalt say unto it, Get thee hence.*
  - i. *[Hosea 14:8]- Ephraim shall say, What have I to do any more with idols? I have heard him, and observed him: I am like a green fir tree. From me is thy fruit found.*
  - j. *[1 John 2:15]- Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him.*
  - k. *[James 4:4]- Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God.*
  - l. *[Revelation 12:1]- And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars:*
6. The sixth property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation is soul-abasing, soul-humbling knowledge. It makes a man very little and low in his own eyes, as you may see in the most knowing apostle:
- a. *[Ephesians 3:8]- Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;*
  - b. *[1 Timothy 1:15]- This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief.*
  - c. *[John 1:26-27]- John answered them, saying, I baptize with water: but there standeth one among you, whom ye know not; He it is, who coming after me is preferred before me, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose.*
  - d. *[Matthew 17:1-5]- And after six days Jesus taketh Peter, James, and John his brother, and bringeth them up into an high mountain apart, And was transfigured before them: and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light. And, behold, there appeared unto them Moses and Elias talking with him. Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias. While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.*
  - e. *[Luke 5:8]- When Simon Peter saw it, he fell down at Jesus' knees, saying, Depart from me; for I am a sinful man, O Lord.*
  - f. *[Genesis 18:27]- And Abraham answered and said, Behold now, I have taken upon me to speak unto the LORD, which am but dust and ashes:*
  - g. *[Genesis 32:10]- I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies, and of all the truth, which thou hast shewed unto thy servant; for with my staff I passed over this Jordan; and now I am become two bands.*
  - h. *[Psalm 73:22]- So foolish was I, and ignorant: I was as a beast before thee.*
  - i. *[Job 42:1-5]- Then Job answered the LORD, and said, I know that thou canst do every thing, and that no thought can be withholden from thee. Who is he that hideth counsel without knowledge? therefore have I uttered that I understood not; things too wonderful for me, which I knew not. Hear, I beseech thee, and I will speak: I will demand of thee, and declare thou unto me. I have heard of thee by the hearing of the ear: but now mine eye seeth thee.*
  - j. *[Proverbs 30:1-4]- The words of Agur the son of Jakeh, even the prophecy: the man spake unto Ithiel, even unto Ithiel and Ucal, Surely I am more brutish than any man,*

*and have not the understanding of a man. I neither learned wisdom, nor have the knowledge of the holy. Who hath ascended up into heaven, or descended? who hath gathered the wind in his fists? who hath bound the waters in a garment? who hath established all the ends of the earth? what is his name, and what is his son's name, if thou canst tell?*

- k. *[Isaiah 6:1-8]- In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the LORD sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the LORD of hosts. Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged. Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here am I; send me.*
  - l. *[1 Corinthians 8:1-2]- Now as touching things offered unto idols, we know that we all have knowledge. Knowledge puffeth up, but charity edifieth. And if any man think that he knoweth any thing, he knoweth nothing yet as he ought to know.*
7. The seventh property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation is an appropriating knowledge; a knowledge, which appropriates and applies spiritual and heavenly benefits to a man's own particular soul.
    - a. *[Job 19:25]- For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth:*
    - b. *[Job 16:19]- Also now, behold, my witness is in heaven, and my record is on high.*
    - c. *[Psalm 16:5]- The LORD is the portion of mine inheritance and of my cup: thou maintainest my lot.*
    - d. *[Psalm 18:2]- The LORD is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower.*
    - e. *[Song of Solomon 2:16]- My beloved is mine, and I am his: he feedeth among the lilies.*
    - f. *[John 20:28]- And Thomas answered and said unto him, My LORD and my God.*
    - g. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  8. The eighth property. That knowledge which accompanies salvation is accompanied and attended with these things:
    - a. Holy endeavours, and with heavenly desires, thirstings, and pantings after a further knowledge of God, after clearer visions of God.
      - 1.) *[Proverbs 15:14]- The heart of him that hath understanding seeketh knowledge: but the mouth of fools feedeth on foolishness.*
      - 2.) *"Seeks" signifies an earnest and diligent seeking; to seek as an hungry man seeks for food; or as a covetous man for gold—the more he has, the more he desires; or as a condemned man seeks for his pardon; or as the diseased man seeks for his cure. The word signifies to seek studiously, laboriously, industriously; to seek by pleading, praying, inquiring, and searching up and down, that we may find what we seek; to seek as men do for hidden treasure."*
      - 3.) *[Proverbs 18:15]- The heart of the prudent getteth knowledge; and the ear of the wise seeketh knowledge.*

- 4.) *[1 Peter 2:2-3]- As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby: If so be ye have tasted that the Lord is gracious.*
  - 5.) *[Psalm 119:18-19]- Open thou mine eyes, that I may behold wondrous things out of thy law. I am a stranger in the earth: hide not thy commandments from me.*
  - 6.) *[Job 34:32]- That which I see not teach thou me: if I have done iniquity, I will do no more.*
- b. Holy endeavours to edify others, to instruct others, to enlighten and inform others in the knowledge of spiritual and heavenly things.
- 1.) *[John 1:45]- Philip findeth Nathanael, and saith unto him, We have found him, of whom Moses in the law, and the prophets, did write, Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph.*
  - 2.) *[John 4:28-29]- The woman then left her waterpot, and went her way into the city, and saith to the men, Come, see a man, which told me all things that ever I did: is not this the Christ?*
  - 3.) *[Song of Solomon 5:10]- My beloved is white and ruddy, the chiefest among ten thousand.*
  - 4.) *[Acts 26:29]- And Paul said, I would to God, that not only thou, but also all that hear me this day, were both almost, and altogether such as I am, except these bonds.*
  - 5.) *[Genesis 18:17,19]- And the LORD said, Shall I hide from Abraham that thing which I do; For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the LORD, to do justice and judgment; that the LORD may bring upon Abraham that which he hath spoken of him.*
  - 6.) *[Proverbs 15:7]- The lips of the wise disperse knowledge: but the heart of the foolish doeth not so.*
  - 7.) *[Acts 4:18-20]- And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus. But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you more than unto God, judge ye. For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard.*
  - 8.) *[Jeremiah 5:14]- Wherefore thus saith the LORD God of hosts, Because ye speak this word, behold, I will make my words in thy mouth fire, and this people wood, and it shall devour them.*
  - 9.) *[Jeremiah 20:2]- Then Pashur smote Jeremiah the prophet, and put him in the stocks that were in the high gate of Benjamin, which was by the house of the LORD.*
  - 10.) *[2 Corinthians 6:10]- As sorrowful, yet alway rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and yet possessing all things.*
  - 11.) *[Galatians 4:19]- My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until Christ be formed in you,*
  - 12.) *[Proverbs 10:21]- The lips of the righteous feed many: but fools die for want of wisdom.*
- c. Holy zeal, courage, and resolution for God.
- 1.) *[Proverbs 28:1]- The wicked flee when no man pursueth: but the righteous are bold as a lion.*
  - 2.) *[Daniel 11:32]- And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he corrupt by flatteries: but the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits.*
  - 3.) *[Proverbs 24:5]- A wise man is strong; yea, a man of knowledge increaseth strength.*
  - 4.) *[Joshua 24:15]- And if it seem evil unto you to serve the LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD.*
  - 5.) *[Psalm 125:1-2]- They that trust in the LORD shall be as mount Zion, which cannot be removed, but abideth for ever. As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so the LORD is round about his people from henceforth even for ever.*

d. Faith and confidence in God.

- 1.) *[Psalm 9:10]- And they that know thy name will put their trust in thee: for thou, LORD, hast not forsaken them that seek thee.*
- 2.) *[2 Timothy 1:12]- For the which cause I also suffer these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day.*

B. What faith that is, which accompanies salvation.

1. Faith, which accompanies salvation, that comprehends salvation that will possess a man of salvation, is known, by the objects about which it is exercised.

a. The Person of Christ is the foremost object of faith.

- 1.) *[Romans 6:11]- Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.*
- 2.) *[1 Peter 1:21]- Who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God.*
- 3.) *[2 Corinthians 3:4]- And such trust have we through Christ to God-ward:*
- 4.) *[Song of Solomon 3:4]- It was but a little that I passed from them, but I found him whom my soul loveth: I held him, and would not let him go, until I had brought him into my mother's house, and into the chamber of her that conceived me.*
- 5.) *[Song of Solomon 7:5]- Thine head upon thee is like Carmel, and the hair of thine head like purple; the king is held in the galleries.*
- 6.) *[Acts 16:30-31]- And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved? And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.*
- 7.) *[John 14:1]- Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me.*
- 8.) *[Isaiah 63:15-16]- Look down from heaven, and behold from the habitation of thy holiness and of thy glory: where is thy zeal and thy strength, the sounding of thy bowels and of thy mercies toward me? are they restrained? Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O LORD, art our father, our redeemer; thy name is from everlasting.*

b. The Righteousness of Jesus Christ.

- 1.) *[Philippians 3:9]- And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:*
- 2.) *[Isaiah 54:6]- For the LORD hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.*
- 3.) *[Colossians 2:10]- And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power:*
- 4.) *[Song of Solomon 4:7]- Thou art all fair, my love; there is no spot in thee.*
- 5.) *[Revelation 14:5]- And in their mouth was found no guile: for they are without fault before the throne of God.*
- 6.) *[Ephesians 5:27]- That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.*
- 7.) Adam's righteousness was but the righteousness of a creature.
  - a.) *[Romans 3:21]- But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;*
  - b.) *[Romans 10:3]- For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.*

- 8.) Adam's righteousness was a *mutable* righteousness, a righteousness that might be sinned away
- a.) *[2 Corinthians 5:21]- For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.*
  - b.) *[Proverbs 8:18]- Riches and honour are with me; yea, durable riches and righteousness.*
- 9.) The righteousness of angels is but the righteousness of creatures—but the righteousness that the saints are clothed with is the very righteousness of God; and in this respect the lowest saint is more excellent and glorious than the most glorious angel.
- a.) *[Psalm 119:142]- Thy righteousness is an everlasting righteousness, and thy law is the truth.*
- 10.) The righteousness of Adam was a righteousness subject to shaking, and we know that Satan did shake all his righteousness about his ears. Oh but that glorious righteousness about which faith is conversant, is an unshaken righteousness, a righteousness which cannot be shaken
- a.) *[Psalm 36:6]- Thy righteousness is like the great mountains; thy judgments are a great deep: O LORD, thou preservest man and beast.*
  - b.) *[Psalm 80:10]- The hills were covered with the shadow of it, and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars.*
  - c.) *[Psalm 65:9]- Thou visitest the earth, and waterest it: thou greatly enrichest it with the river of God, which is full of water: thou preparest them corn, when thou hast so provided for it.*
  - d.) *[Genesis 30:8]- And Rachel said, With great wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed: and she called his name Naphtali.*
  - e.) *[Revelation 15:2]- And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God.*
- 11.) Adam's righteousness was a low righteousness, a righteousness within his own reach, and a righteousness within Satan's reach; it was not so high—but Adam could lay his hand upon it, as I may say; it was not so high—but Satan could reach to the top of it, yes, to the overtopping of it, as we have all found by woeful experience.
- a.) *[Psalm 71:15-16,19]- My mouth shall shew forth thy righteousness and thy salvation all the day; for I know not the numbers thereof. I will go in the strength of the Lord GOD: I will make mention of thy righteousness, even of thine only. Thy righteousness also, O God, is very high, who hast done great things: O God, who is like unto thee!*
- 12.) This glorious righteousness of Christ, about which faith is busied, is called the righteousness of faith, because faith apprehends it, and applies it, and feeds upon it, and delights in it.
- a.) *[Romans 3:28]- Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law.*
  - b.) *[Romans 4:13]- For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, was not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith.*
  - c.) *[Romans 9:30]- What shall we say then? That the Gentiles, which followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith.*

- d.) *[Romans 10:6]- But the righteousness which is of faith speaketh on this wise, Say not in thine heart, Who shall ascend into heaven? (that is, to bring Christ down from above:)*
- e.) Faith is only the instrument; it cannot be the substance of that righteousness, as it were, whereby we are justified and saved
- 1.) Because it is imperfect;
  - 2.) The acts of faith are transient.
  - 3.) Then should men have something within them whereof to boast.
  - 4.) Faith is a part of inherent holiness;
  - 5.) Then some men should be justified more, and some less, according to the different measures of faith in them,
    - a.) *[Isaiah 45:24]- Surely, shall one say, in the LORD have I righteousness and strength: even to him shall men come; and all that are incensed against him shall be ashamed.*
    - b.) *[Isaiah 61:10]- I will greatly rejoice in the LORD, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.*
    - c.) *[Romans 10:4]- For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.*
- c. Precious promises, which are a Christian's Magna Charta.
- 1.) *[2 Peter 1:4]- Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 119:49-50]- Remember the word unto thy servant, upon which thou hast caused me to hope. This is my comfort in my affliction: for thy word hath quickened me.*
  - 3.) *[Psalm 27:13]- I had fainted, unless I had believed to see the goodness of the LORD in the land of the living.*
  - 4.) *[Hebrews 11:13]- These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.*
  - 5.) In your looking upon the promises, mind most, eye most, spiritual promises, absolute promises.
    - a.) *[Jeremiah 32:40-41]- And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from me. Yea, I will rejoice over them to do them good, and I will plant them in this land assuredly with my whole heart and with my whole soul.*
    - b.) *[Ezekiel 11:19-20]- And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh: That they may walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, and do them: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God.*
    - c.) *[Ezekiel 36:25-27]- Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean: from all your filthiness, and from all your idols, will I cleanse you. A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.*
    - d.) *[Isaiah 42:1]- Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.*

- e.) *[Ezekiel 20:41-43]- I will accept you with your sweet savour, when I bring you out from the people, and gather you out of the countries wherein ye have been scattered; and I will be sanctified in you before the heathen. And ye shall know that I am the LORD, when I shall bring you into the land of Israel, into the country for the which I lifted up mine hand to give it to your fathers. And there shall ye remember your ways, and all your doings, wherein ye have been defiled; and ye shall lothe yourselves in your own sight for all your evils that ye have committed.*
  - f.) *[Psalm 91:15]- He shall call upon me, and I will answer him: I will be with him in trouble; I will deliver him, and honour him.*
  - g.) *[Isaiah 65:24]- And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear.*
  - h.) *[Jeremiah 33:3]- Call unto me, and I will answer thee, and show thee great and mighty things, which thou knowest not.*
  - i.) *[Isaiah 32:15]- Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest.*
  - j.) *[Ezekiel 34:30-31]- Thus shall they know that I the LORD their God am with them, and that they, even the house of Israel, are my people, saith the Lord GOD. And ye my flock, the flock of my pasture, are men, and I am your God, saith the Lord GOD.*
- 6.) Enlarge and expatiate your understandings to an effectual contemplation of all those riches and treasures, which God has laid up in the promises.
- a.) *[Esther 5:10-12]- Nevertheless Haman refrained himself: and when he came home, he sent and called for his friends, and Zeresh his wife. And Haman told them of the glory of his riches, and the multitude of his children, and all the things wherein the king had promoted him, and how he had advanced him above the princes and servants of the king. Haman said moreover, Yea, Esther the queen did let no man come in with the king unto the banquet that she had prepared but myself; and to morrow am I invited unto her also with the king.*
- d. That glory, blessedness, and life, which God has laid up for those who love him.
- 1.) *[Hebrews 11:1]- Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 60:6]- God hath spoken in his holiness; I will rejoice, I will divide Shechem, and mete out the valley of Succoth.*
  - 3.) *[Hebrews 12:2]- Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.*
  - 4.) *[2 Corinthians 4:17-18]- For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory; While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.*
  - 5.) *[Hebrews 6:19]- Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;*
  - 6.) *[Romans 8:18]- For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us.*
  - 7.) *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
  - 8.) *[Acts 7:56-58]- And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God. Then they cried out with a loud voice, and stopped their ears, and ran upon him with one accord, And cast him out of the city,*

*and stoned him: and the witnesses laid down their clothes at a young man's feet, whose name was Saul.*

2. Faith, which accompanies salvation, that comprehends salvation that will possess a man of salvation, is known, by the properties of it.
  - a. It puts forth itself into vital operation.
    - 1.) Saving faith puts the soul upon **grieving** for sin, upon **combating** with sin, upon **weeping** over sin, upon **trembling** at the occasions of sin, upon **resisting** temptations that lead to sin, upon **fighting** it out to the death with sin,
      - a.) *[Zechariah 12:10]- And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.*
    - 2.) Faith puts a man upon walking with God, upon waiting on God, upon working for God, upon wrestling with God, upon bearing for God, and upon parting with anything for God.
      - a.) *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
    - 3.) Faith makes pious duties to be easy to the soul, to be delightful to the soul, to be profitable to the soul.
    - 4.) Faith makes the soul to be serious and conscientious in doing, to be careful and faithful in doing, to be delightful and cheerful in doing, to be diligent and faithful in doing.
      - a.) *[James 2:17-26]- Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone. Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble. But wilt thou know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead? Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar? Seest thou how faith wrought with his works, and by works was faith made perfect? And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, Abraham believed God, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness: and he was called the Friend of God. Ye see then how that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only. Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent them out another way? For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also.*
    - 5.) Faith looks to precepts as well as to promises:
      - a.) *[Psalm 119:66]- Teach me good judgment and knowledge: for I have believed thy commandments.*
    - 6.) Faith which accompanies salvation is better at doing than at thinking, at obeying than at disputing, at walking than at talking:
      - a.) *[Titus 3:8]- This is a faithful saying, and these things I will that thou affirm constantly, that they which have believed in God might be careful to maintain good works. These things are good and profitable unto men.*
      - b.) *[Isaiah 65:24]- And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear.*
      - c.) *[Genesis 4:4]- And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the LORD had respect unto Abel and to his offering:*



- d.) *[2 Peter 3:11]- Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness,*
  - e.) *[Song of Solomon 2:14]- O my dove, that art in the clefts of the rock, in the secret places of the stairs, let me see thy countenance, let me hear thy voice; for sweet is thy voice, and thy countenance is comely.*
  - f.) *[Matthew 27:66]- So they went, and made the sepulchre sure, sealing the stone, and setting a watch.*
  - g.) *[Isaiah 41:10-11]- Fear thou not; for I am with thee; be not dismayed; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness. Behold, all they that were incensed against thee shall be ashamed and confounded: they shall be as nothing; and they that strive with thee shall perish.*
  - h.) *[Hebrews 13:5-6]- Let your conversation be without covetousness; and be content with such things as ye have: for he hath said, I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee. So that we may boldly say, The Lord is my helper, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me.*
  - i.) *[Ezekiel 36:26-27]- A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.*
- 7.) Faith will make a man endeavour to be good, yes, to be best, at everything he undertakes. It is not leaves but fruit, not words but works—which God expects; and if we cross his expectation, we frustrate our own salvation, we further our own condemnation.
- 8.) Faith makes the soul much in doing, abundant in working, and that partly by persuading the soul that all its works, all its duties and services, shall be owned and accepted of God.
- a.) *[Isaiah 56:7]- Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people.*
- 9.) Faith assures the soul that every prayer, every sigh, every groan, every tear is accepted.
- 10.) Faith spreads the promises of divine assistance before the soul.
- 11.) Faith sets the recompense, the reward, before the soul.
- a.) *[Hebrews 11:25-26]- Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.*
  - b.) *“There is a resurrection of works as well as of people, and in that day wicked men shall see that it is not a vain thing to serve God; they shall see the most doing souls to be the most shining souls, to be the most advanced and rewarded. Oh the sight of this crown, of this recompense, makes souls to abound in the work of the Lord, they knowing that their labour is not in vain in the Lord,”*
  - c.) *[1 Corinthians 15:58]- Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.*
  - d.) *[Revelation 14:13]- And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them.*
- 12.) Faith looks upon Christ as a head, and so draws from him; it looks upon Christ as a husband, and so draws from him; it looks upon him as a fountain, and so draws from

him; it looks upon him as a sea, as an ocean of goodness, and so draws from him; it looks upon him as a father.

a.) *[Colossians 1:19]- For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;*

b.) *[John 1:16]- And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace.*

13.) Love touched by a hand of faith flames forth; hope fed at faith's table grows strong, and casts anchor within the veil.

a.) *[Romans 15:13]- Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Ghost.*

14.) Joy, courage, and zeal being smiled upon by faith, is made invincible and unconquerable, etc. Look! what oil is to the wheels, what weights are to the clock, what wings are to the bird, what sails are to the ship, that faith is to all pious duties and services, except it be winter with the soul.

b. It is of a growing and increasing nature.

1.) *[Ezekiel 17:22]- Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will also take of the highest branch of the high cedar, and will set it; I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will plant it upon an high mountain and eminent:*

2.) *[Matthew 13:32]- Which indeed is the least of all seeds: but when it is grown, it is the greatest among herbs, and becometh a tree, so that the birds of the air come and lodge in the branches thereof.*

3.) Faith is imperfect, as all other graces are—but yet it grows and increases gradually.

4.) *[Psalm 92:12-14]- The righteous shall flourish like the palm tree: he shall grow like a cedar in Lebanon. Those that be planted in the house of the LORD shall flourish in the courts of our God. They shall still bring forth fruit in old age; they shall be fat and flourishing;*

5.) *[Romans 1:17]- For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.*

6.) *[2 Thessalonians 1:3]- We are bound to thank God always for you, brethren, as it is meet, because that your faith groweth exceedingly, and the charity of every one of you all toward each other aboundeth;*

7.) From that union and communion which the soul has with Christ, flows such a divine power and virtue, that causes faith to grow.

8.) Yet that no weak believer may be stumbled, or saddened, let them remember.

a.) There are some certain seasons and cases wherein a man may decay in his faith, and wherein he may not have the exercise and the actings of his faith.

b.) The strongest faith at times is subject to shakings.

c.) It makes those things which are great and glorious in the world's account—to be very little and low in the eyes of the believer.

c. It makes those things which are great and glorious in the world's account—to be very little and low in the eyes of the believer.

1.) *[Hebrews 11:9]- By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as in a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise:*

2.) *[Matthew 6:19-20]- Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and where thieves break through and steal: But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal:*

3.) *[Psalm 4:6-7]- There be many that say, Who will shew us any good? LORD, lift thou up the light of thy countenance upon us. Thou hast put gladness in my heart, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased.*

- 4.) *[Hebrews 11:24-26]- By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.*
  - 5.) *[Philippians 3:8]- Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,*
  - 6.) *[Galatians 6:14]- But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.*
  - 7.) *[2 Corinthians 5:1-2]- For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven:*
  - 8.) *[2 Timothy 4:8]- Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
  - 9.) *"The view of Lucian is very pleasant, who going to the top of a high mountain, saw all the affairs of men, and looked on their greatest, richest, and most glorious cities, as little birds' nests. Faith sets the soul upon the hill of God, the mountain of God, that is, a high mountain; and from thence, faith gives the soul a sight, a prospect of all things here below. And, ah! how like birds' nests do all the riches, honours, and glories of this world look and appear to them, that faith has set upon God's high hill."*
- d. It purifies the heart; it is a heart purifying faith.
- 1.) *[Acts 15:9]- And put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 6:14,21]- For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace. What fruit had ye then in those things whereof ye are now ashamed? for the end of those things is death.*
  - 3.) *[Jeremiah 33:8]- And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against me; and I will pardon all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned, and whereby they have transgressed against me.*
  - 4.) *[Micah 7:19]- He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.*
  - 5.) *[Psalm 65:3]- Iniquities prevail against me: as for our transgressions, thou shalt purge them away.*
  - 6.) *[Isaiah 1:25]- And I will turn my hand upon thee, and purely purge away thy dross, and take away all thy tin:*
  - 7.) *[1 Samuel 17:47]- And all this assembly shall know that the LORD saveth not with sword and spear: for the battle is the LORD's, and he will give you into our hands.*
  - 8.) *[Psalm 61:2]- From the end of the earth will I cry unto thee, when my heart is overwhelmed: lead me to the rock that is higher than I.*
  - 9.) *[Zechariah 13:1]- In that day there shall be a fountain opened to the house of David and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem for sin and for uncleanness.*
  - 10.) *[Hebrews 4:2]- For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.*
- e. It is soul softening; it is soul mollifying.
- 1.) *[Matthew 26:75]- And Peter remembered the word of Jesus, which said unto him, Before the cock crow, thou shalt deny me thrice. And he went out, and wept bitterly.*
  - 2.) *[Luke 7:44]- And he turned to the woman, and said unto Simon, Seest thou this woman? I entered into thine house, thou gavest me no water for my feet: but*

she hath washed my feet with tears, and wiped them with the hairs of her head.

- 3.) [Zechariah 12:10]- And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.
- 4.) *"that that **head** which was crowned with honour, should be crowned with thorns; that those **eyes** which were as a flame of fire, which were clearer than the sun, should be closed up by the darkness of death; that those **ears** which were accustomed to hear nothing but hallelujahs, should hear nothing but blasphemies; that that **face** which was white and ruddy should be spit upon by the beastly Jews; that that **tongue** which spoke as never any man spoke, yes, as never any angel spoke, should be accused of blasphemy; that those **hands** which swayed both a golden scepter and an iron rod, and those **feet** that were as fine brass, should be nailed to the cross—and all this for man's transgression, for man's rebellion! Oh! the sight of these things, the believing of these things, the acting of faith on these things, makes a gracious soul to break and bleed, to sigh and groan, to mourn and lament!"*

f. **It is a world-conquering faith, it is a world-overcoming faith.**

- 1.) *[1 John 5:4]- For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.*
- 2.) Faith overcomes the **frowning** world, the **fawning** world, the **tempting** world, and the **persecuting** world, and that it does thus:
  - a.) Faith, by uniting the soul to Christ, does interest the soul in all the victories and conquests of Christ, and so makes the soul a conqueror with Christ:
    - 1.) *[John 16:33]- These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.*
    - 2.) *[Romans 8:37]- Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.*
  - b.) Faith overcomes the world, by outbidding sights.
    - 1.) *[Hebrews 12:2]- Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.*
  - c.) Faith overcomes the world, by telling the soul that all things are its own.
    - 1.) *[1 Corinthians 3:22]- Whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the world, or life, or death, or things present, or things to come; all are your's;*
    - 2.) *[Hebrews 11:35]- Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:*
  - d.) Faith overcomes the world, by valuing the things of this world as they are.
  - e.) Faith overcomes the world, by presenting Jesus Christ to the soul as a most excellent, glorious, and comprehensive good, as such a good which comprehends all good.

3. Hints concerning STRONG faith.

- a. Strong faith will make a soul resolute in resisting, and happy in conquering the strongest temptations.
  - 1.) *[Hebrews 11:3]- Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear.*

- 2.) *[Daniel 6:10]- Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime.*
- b. Strong faith will make a man own God, and cleave to God, and hang upon God, in the face of the greatest difficulties and dangers.
    - 1.) *[Romans 4:18]- Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 44:16-18]- For the voice of him that reproacheth and blasphemeth; by reason of the enemy and avenger. All this is come upon us; yet have we not forgotten thee, neither have we dealt falsely in thy covenant. Our heart is not turned back, neither have our steps declined from thy way;*
    - 3.) *[Job 13:15-16]- Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him: but I will maintain mine own ways before him. He also shall be my salvation: for an hypocrite shall not come before him.*
  - c. Strong faith will enable men to prefer Christ's cross before the world's crown, to prefer tortures before deliverance.
    - 1.) *[Hebrews 11:3]- Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear.*
  - d. Strong faith will make a soul divinely fearless, and divinely courageous. It will make a man live as the child lives in the family—without fear or care.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 23:4]- Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me.*
    - 2.) *[Daniel 3:16]- Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we are not careful to answer thee in this matter.*
    - 3.) *[Micah 7:7-9]- Therefore I will look unto the LORD; I will wait for the God of my salvation: my God will hear me. Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the LORD shall be a light unto me. I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness.*
  - e. Strong faith will make a man cleave to the promise, when providence runs cross to the promise.
    - 1.) *[Numbers 10:29]- And Moses said unto Hobab, the son of Raguel the Midianite, Moses' father in law, We are journeying unto the place of which the LORD said, I will give it you: come thou with us, and we will do thee good: for the LORD hath spoken good concerning Israel.*
    - 2.) *[2 Chronicles 20:9-11]- If, when evil cometh upon us, as the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine, we stand before this house, and in thy presence, (for thy name is in this house,) and cry unto thee in our affliction, then thou wilt hear and help. And now, behold, the children of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir, whom thou wouldest not let Israel invade, when they came out of the land of Egypt, but they turned from them, and destroyed them not; Behold, I say, how they reward us, to come to cast us out of thy possession, which thou hast given us to inherit.*
    - 3.) *[Psalm 60:6-7]- God hath spoken in his holiness; I will rejoice, I will divide Shechem, and mete out the valley of Succoth. Gilead is mine, and Manasseh is mine; Ephraim also is the strength of mine head; Judah is my lawgiver;*
    - 4.) *[Numbers 14:22-24]- Because all those men which have seen my glory, and my miracles, which I did in Egypt and in the wilderness, and have tempted me now these*

*ten times, and have not hearkened to my voice; Surely they shall not see the land which I swear unto their fathers, neither shall any of them that provoked me see it: But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it.*

- f. Strong faith will make men comply with those commands, which most cross them in their most desirable comforts.
  - 1.) *[Hebrews 11:8-9]- By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went. By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as in a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise:*
  - 2.) *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
  - 3.) *[Genesis 22:1-2,10-13]- And it came to pass after these things, that God did tempt Abraham, and said unto him, Abraham: and he said, Behold, here I am. And he said, Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of. And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. And the angel of the LORD called unto him out of heaven, and said, Abraham, Abraham: and he said, Here am I. And he said, Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him: for now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son from me. And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind him a ram caught in a thicket by his horns: and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son.*
4. Hints concerning WEAK faith.
  - a. A weak faith does as much justify and as much unite a man to Christ—as a strong faith does.
    - 1.) *[John 1:12]- But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:*
  - b. The promises of eternal happiness and blessedness are not given only to the *strength* of faith—but to the *truth* of faith; not to the *highest degrees* of faith—but to the *reality* of faith.
    - 1.) *[Hebrews 11:33-35]- Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions. Quenched the violence of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, out of weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in fight, turned to flight the armies of the aliens. Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:*
  - c. The weakest faith shall grow stronger and stronger. A weak believer shall go on from faith to faith.
    - 1.) *[Romans 1:17]- For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.*
    - 2.) *[Hebrews 12:2]- Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.*
    - 3.) *[Philippians 1:6]- Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:*

- 4.) *[1 Peter 1:5]- Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.*
  - 5.) *[Matthew 12:20]- A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory.*
  - 6.) *[Matthew 13:32]- Which indeed is the least of all seeds: but when it is grown, it is the greatest among herbs, and becometh a tree, so that the birds of the air come and lodge in the branches thereof.*
- d. A little faith is faith, as a spark of fire is fire, a drop of water is water, a little star is a star, a little pearl is a pearl.
- 1.) *[Matthew 18:10]- Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.*
  - 2.) *[1 Peter 2:7]- Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,*
- C. What repentance that is, which accompanies salvation.
1. Repentance, which accompanies salvation, is a general, a universal change of the whole man.
    - a. *[Isaiah 1:16-18]- Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil; Learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow. Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.*
    - b. *[Ezekiel 18:30-32]- Therefore I will judge you, O house of Israel, every one according to his ways, saith the Lord GOD. Repent, and turn yourselves from all your transgressions; so iniquity shall not be your ruin. Cast away from you all your transgressions, whereby ye have transgressed; and make you a new heart and a new spirit: for why will ye die, O house of Israel? For I have no pleasure in the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord GOD: wherefore turn yourselves, and live ye.*
    - c. *"The understanding is turned from darkness to light; the will from a sinful servility to a holy liberty; the affections from disorder into order; the heart from hardness into softness. So in the outward man, the lustful eye is turned into an eye of chastity; the wanton ear is turned into an obedient ear; the hands of bribery are turned into hands of liberality; and the wandering feet of vanity are turned into ways of purity."*
    - d. *[Psalm 45:13]- The king's daughter is all glorious within: her clothing is of wrought gold.*
  2. Repentance which accompanies salvation is a total turning as well as a universal turning; a turning from all sin, without any reservation or exception.
    - a. *[Psalm 119:163]- I hate and abhor lying: but thy law do I love.*
    - b. *[Ezekiel 18:30]- Therefore I will judge you, O house of Israel, every one according to his ways, saith the Lord GOD. Repent, and turn yourselves from all your transgressions; so iniquity shall not be your ruin.*
    - c. *[Ezekiel 33:11]- Say unto them, As I live, saith the Lord GOD, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked; but that the wicked turn from his way and live: turn ye, turn ye from your evil ways; for why will ye die, O house of Israel?*
    - d. *"As Noah's flood drowned his nearest and his dearest friends, so the flood of penitent tears drowns men's nearest and their dearest lusts!"*
    - e. *[Jeremiah 33:8]- And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against me; and I will pardon all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned, and whereby they have transgressed against me.*
    - f. *[Ezekiel 36:25,29,33]- Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean: from all your filthiness, and from all your idols, will I cleanse you. I will also save you*

*from all your uncleannesses: and I will call for the corn, and will increase it, and lay no famine upon you. Thus saith the Lord GOD; In the day that I shall have cleansed you from all your iniquities I will also cause you to dwell in the cities, and the wastes shall be builded.*

- g. *[1 John 1:9]- If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.*
  - h. *[Ezekiel 14:6]- Therefore say unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Repent, and turn yourselves from your idols; and turn away your faces from all your abominations.*
  - i. *[James 2:20]- But wilt thou know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead?*
  - j. *[2 Samuel 19:29]- And the king said unto him, Why speakest thou any more of thy matters? I have said, Thou and Ziba divide the land.*
3. That repentance which accompanies salvation is not only a turning from all sin—but it is also a turning unto God.
- a. *[Acts 26:18]- To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.*
  - b. *[Isaiah 55:7]- Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.*
  - c. *[Ezekiel 18:21]- But if the wicked will turn from all his sins that he hath committed, and keep all my statutes, and do that which is lawful and right, he shall surely live, he shall not die.*
  - d. *[Luke 18:5]- Yet because this widow troubleth me, I will avenge her, lest by her continual coming she weary me.*
  - e. *[Matthew 20:13-14]- But he answered one of them, and said, Friend, I do thee no wrong: didst not thou agree with me for a penny? Take that thine is, and go thy way: I will give unto this last, even as unto thee.*
  - f. *[Matthew 7:19]- Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.*
  - g. *[Psalm 119:3]- They also do no iniquity: they walk in his ways.*
4. That repentance which accompanies salvation, strikes most effectually and particularly against that sin or sins, that the sinner was most apt and prone to before his conversion.
- a. *[Isaiah 27:9]- By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this is all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up.*
  - b. *[Isaiah 30:22]- Ye shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth; thou shalt say unto it, Get thee hence.*
  - c. *[Luke 7:37-38]- And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that Jesus sat at meat in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment, And stood at his feet behind him weeping, and began to wash his feet with tears, and did wipe them with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet, and anointed them with the ointment.*
  - d. *[Acts 16:33-34]- And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed their stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway. And when he had brought them into his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in God with all his house.*
  - e. *[Luke 19:8]- And Zacchaeus stood, and said unto the Lord: Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have taken any thing from any man by false accusation, I restore him fourfold.*
  - f. *[2 Chronicles 33:6]- And he caused his children to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of Hinnom: also he observed times, and used enchantments, and used witchcraft,*



*and dealt with a familiar spirit, and with wizards: he wrought much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke him to anger.*

5. That repentance, which accompanies salvation, is very large and comprehensive.
  - a. True repentance includes a SIGHT and SENSE of sin.
    - 1.) *[Jeremiah 31:18-19]- I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself thus; Thou hast chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, and I shall be turned; for thou art the LORD my God. Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I smote upon my thigh: I was ashamed, yea, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 139:24]- And see if there be any wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting.*
  - b. True repentance includes not only a sight and sense of sin—but also CONFESSION and acknowledgment of sin.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 51:1]- Have mercy upon me, O God, according to thy lovingkindness: according unto the multitude of thy tender mercies blot out my transgressions.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 32:3-5]- When I kept silence, my bones waxed old through my roaring all the day long. For day and night thy hand was heavy upon me: my moisture is turned into the drought of summer. Selah. I acknowledge my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah.*
    - 3.) *[Job 33:21-22,26-27]- His flesh is consumed away, that it cannot be seen; and his bones that were not seen stick out. Yea, his soul draweth near unto the grave, and his life to the destroyers. He shall pray unto God, and he will be favourable unto him: and he shall see his face with joy: for he will render unto man his righteousness. He looketh upon men, and if any say, I have sinned, and perverted that which was right, and it profited me not;*
    - 4.) *[1 John 1:9]- If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.*
    - 5.) *[Proverbs 28:13]- He that covereth his sins shall not prosper: but whoso confesseth and forsaketh them shall have mercy.*
  - c. True repentance includes not only confession of sin—but also CONTRITION for sin.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 51:4]- Against thee, thee only, have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight: that thou mightest be justified when thou speakest, and be clear when thou judgest.*
    - 2.) *[1 Samuel 7:2]- And it came to pass, while the ark abode in Kirjathjearim, that the time was long; for it was twenty years: and all the house of Israel lamented after the LORD.*
    - 3.) *[Zechariah 12:10-11]- And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem, as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon.*
    - 4.) *[Ezra 10:1-2]- Now when Ezra had prayed, and when he had confessed, weeping and casting himself down before the house of God, there assembled unto him out of Israel a very great congregation of men and women and children: for the people wept very sore. And Shechaniah the son of Jehiel, one of the sons of Elam, answered and said unto Ezra, We have trespassed against our God, and have taken strange wives of the people of the land: yet now there is hope in Israel concerning this thing.*
    - 5.) *[2 Corinthians 7:11]- For behold this selfsame thing, that ye sorrowed after a godly sort, what carefulness it wrought in you, yea, what clearing of yourselves, yea, what*

- indignation, yea, what fear, yea, what vehement desire, yea, what zeal, yea, what revenge! In all things ye have approved yourselves to be clear in this matter.*
- 6.) *[Jeremiah 13:17]- But if ye will not hear it, my soul shall weep in secret places for your pride; and mine eye shall weep sore, and run down with tears, because the LORD's flock is carried away captive.*
  - 7.) *[Joel 2:13]- And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the LORD your God: for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil.*
  - 8.) *"The sweetest joys are from the sourest tears; penitent tears are the breeders of spiritual joy."*
  - 9.) *[1 Samuel 1:18]- And she said, Let thine handmaid find grace in thy sight. So the woman went her way, and did eat, and her countenance was no more sad.*
  - 10.) *[Psalm 126:5]- They that sow in tears shall reap in joy.*
  - 11.) *"But that no mourner may drown himself in his own tears, let me give this CAUTION, namely, that there is nothing beyond remedy—but the tears of the damned. A man who may persist in the way to paradise, should not place himself in the condition of a little hell; and he who has a genuine hope for that great all, ought not to be dejected nor overwhelmed for anything."*
- d. True repentance includes not only contrition for sin—but also a holy SHAME and blushing for sin.
- 1.) *[Ezra 9:6]- And said, O my God, I am ashamed and blush to lift up my face to thee, my God: for our iniquities are increased over our head, and our trespass is grown up unto the heavens.*
  - 2.) *[Jeremiah 3:24-25]- For shame hath devoured the labour of our fathers from our youth; their flocks and their herds, their sons and their daughters. We lie down in our shame, and our confusion covereth us: for we have sinned against the LORD our God, we and our fathers, from our youth even unto this day, and have not obeyed the voice of the LORD our God.*
  - 3.) *[Jeremiah 31:19]- Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I smote upon my thigh: I was ashamed, yea, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth.*
  - 4.) *[Ezekiel 16:63]- That thou mayest remember, and be confounded, and never open thy mouth any more because of thy shame, when I am pacified toward thee for all that thou hast done, saith the Lord GOD.*
  - 5.) *[Romans 6:21]- What fruit had ye then in those things whereof ye are now ashamed? for the end of those things is death.*
  - 6.) *"A soul who has sinned away all shame is a soul ripe for hell, and given up to Satan! A greater plague cannot befall a man in this life than to sin and not to blush!"*
- e. True repentance comprehends LOATHING and ABHORRING of sin, and of ourselves for sin.
- 1.) *[Job 42:6]- Wherefore I abhor myself, and repent in dust and ashes.*
  - 2.) *[Ezekiel 16:61-63]- Then thou shalt remember thy ways, and be ashamed, when thou shalt receive thy sisters, thine elder and thy younger: and I will give them unto thee for daughters, but not by thy covenant. And I will establish my covenant with thee; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: That thou mayest remember, and be confounded, and never open thy mouth any more because of thy shame, when I am pacified toward thee for all that thou hast done, saith the Lord GOD.*
  - 3.) *[Amos 5:15]- Hate the evil, and love the good, and establish judgment in the gate: it may be that the LORD God of hosts will be gracious unto the remnant of Joseph.*
  - 4.) *[Ezekiel 20:43]- And there shall ye remember your ways, and all your doings, wherein ye have been defiled; and ye shall lothe yourselves in your own sight for all your evils that ye have committed.*

- 5.) *"It is very observable that those brave creatures, the eagle and the lion, were not offered in sacrifice unto God—but the poor lamb and dove; to note that God regards not your brave, high, lofty spirits—but poor, meek, and contemptible spirits."*
  - 6.) *[Job 40:4]- Behold, I am vile; what shall I answer thee? I will lay mine hand upon my mouth.*
  - 7.) *[Ezekiel 6:9]- And they that escape of you shall remember me among the nations whither they shall be carried captives, because I am broken with their whorish heart, which hath departed from me, and with their eyes, which go a whoring after their idols: and they shall loathe themselves for the evils which they have committed in all their abominations.*
6. That repentance, which accompanies salvation, has these choice COMPANIONS attending of it.
- a. FAITH.
    - 1.) *[Zechariah 12:10-11]- And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem, as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon.*
    - 2.) *[Matthew 4:17]- From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.*
    - 3.) *[Mark 1:14-15]- Now after that John was put in prison, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God, And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.*
  - b. LOVE TO CHRIST
    - 1.) *[Luke 7:37]- And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that Jesus sat at meat in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment,*
  - c. A FILIAL FEAR OF OFFENDING GOD.
    - 1.) *[2 Corinthians 7:10]- For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death.*
7. That repentance which accompanies salvation is a CONTINUED act.
- 1.) *[2 Corinthians 7:10]- For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 51:3]- For I acknowledge my transgressions: and my sin is ever before me.*
  - 3.) *[Hosea 14:8]- Ephraim shall say, What have I to do any more with idols? I have heard him, and observed him: I am like a green fir tree. From me is thy fruit found.*
  - 4.) *"It is an extraordinary vanity in some men to lay aside their sins before solemn duties—but with a purpose to return to them again, as the serpent lays aside his poison when he goes to drink, and when he has drunk, he returns to it again, as they fable it."*
  - 5.) *[Genesis 22:5]- And Abraham said unto his young men, Abide ye here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you.*
  - 6.) *[2 Samuel 13:15]- Then Amnon hated her exceedingly; so that the hatred wherewith he hated her was greater than the love wherewith he had loved her. And Amnon said unto her, Arise, be gone.*
- D. What obedience that is, which accompanies salvation.
1. That obedience which accompanies salvation is CORDIAL and HEARTY.
    - a. *[Romans 6:17]- But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you.*

- b. *[Romans 7:25]- I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.*
  - c. *[Romans 1:9]- For God is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit in the gospel of his Son, that without ceasing I make mention of you always in my prayers;*
  - d. *[Ezekiel 36:26-27]- A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.*
  - e. *[Isaiah 29:13]- Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men:*
  - f. *[Matthew 15:7-9]- Ye hypocrites, well did Esaias prophesy of you, saying, This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me. But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.*
  - g. *[Proverbs 23:26]- My son, give me thine heart, and let thine eyes observe my ways.*
  - h. *[Psalm 40:8]- I delight to do thy will, O my God: yea, thy law is within my heart.*
  - i. *[Matt 23.3-11]- All therefore whatsoever they bid you observe, that observe and do; but do not ye after their works: for they say, and do not. For they bind heavy burdens and grievous to be borne, and lay them on men's shoulders; but they themselves will not move them with one of their fingers. But all their works they do for to be seen of men: they make broad their phylacteries, and enlarge the borders of their garments, And love the uppermost rooms at feasts, and the chief seats in the synagogues, And greetings in the markets, and to be called of men, Rabbi, Rabbi. But be not ye called Rabbi: for one is your Master, even Christ; and all ye are brethren. And call no man your father upon the earth: for one is your Father, which is in heaven. Neither be ye called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ. But he that is greatest among you shall be your servant.*
  - j. *"No action, no service, is accepted in heaven—but that which is sealed up with integrity of heart. God will not be put off with the shell, when we give the devil the kernel."*
2. That obedience which accompanies salvation is UNIVERSAL as well as cordial.
- a. *[Psalm 119:6]- Then shall I not be ashamed, when I have respect unto all thy commandments.*
  - b. *[Luke 1:5-6]- There was in the days of Herod, the king of Judaea, a certain priest named Zacharias, of the course of Abia: and his wife was of the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elisabeth. And they were both righteous before God, walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless.*
  - c. *"An obedient soul is like a crystal glass with a light in the midst, which shines forth through every part thereof. So that royal law that is written upon his heart shines forth into every parcel of his life; his outward works do echo to a law within."*
  - d. *[John 2:5]- His mother saith unto the servants, Whatsoever he saith unto you, do it.*
  - e. *[Psalm 119:34,69]- Give me understanding, and I shall keep thy law; yea, I shall observe it with my whole heart. The proud have forged a lie against me: but I will keep thy precepts with my whole heart.*
  - f. *[James 2:10]- For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all.*
  - g. *[Ezekiel 18:10-13]- If he beget a son that is a robber, a shedder of blood, and that doeth the like to any one of these things, And that doeth not any of those duties, but even hath eaten upon the mountains, and defiled his neighbour's wife, Hath oppressed the poor and needy, hath spoiled by violence, hath not restored the pledge, and hath lifted up his eyes to the idols, hath committed abomination, Hath given forth upon usury, and hath taken increase: shall he then live? he shall not live: he hath done all these abominations; he shall surely die; his blood shall be upon him.*

- h. *[Numbers 14:24]- But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it.*
  - i. *[Acts 10:33]- Immediately therefore I sent to thee; and thou hast well done that thou art come. Now therefore are we all here present before God, to hear all things that are commanded thee of God.*
  - j. *[Acts 13:22]- And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.*
  - k. *[Joshua 1:8]- This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.*
  - l. *[Deuteronomy 5:29]- O that there were such an heart in them, that they would fear me, and keep all my commandments always, that it might be well with them, and with their children for ever!*
  - m. *[Ezekiel 18.4]- Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die. But if a man be just, and do that which is lawful and right,*
3. That obedience which accompanies salvation springs from inward spiritual causes, and from holy and heavenly motives.
- a. It flows from faith. Hence it is called "the obedience of faith,"
    - 1.) *[Romans 16:26]- But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:*
    - 2.) *[1 Timothy 1:5]- Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned:*
  - b. Love, puts the soul forward in ways of obedience.
    - 1.) *[John 14:21,23]- He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 119:48]- My hands also will I lift up unto thy commandments, which I have loved; and I will meditate in thy statutes.*
  - c. It flows from a filial fear of God.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 119:161]- Princes have persecuted me without a cause: but my heart standeth in awe of thy word.*
    - 2.) *[Hebrews 11:7]- By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith.*
    - 3.) *[Isaiah 1:11]- To what purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the LORD: I am full of the burnt offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he goats.*
  - d. It flows from holy and heavenly motives.
    - 1.) *[Isaiah 64:5]- Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.*

- 2.) *[Hosea 7:14]- And they have not cried unto me with their heart, when they howled upon their beds: they assemble themselves for corn and wine, and they rebel against me.*
  - 3.) *[Hosea 5:15]- I will go and return to my place, till they acknowledge their offence, and seek my face: in their affliction they will seek me early.*
  - 4.) *[Psalm 78:34]- When he slew them, then they sought him: and they returned and enquired early after God.*
4. That obedience which accompanies salvation is a ready, free, willing, and cheerful obedience.
- a. It is READY obedience.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 27:8]- When thou saidst, Seek ye my face; my heart said unto thee, Thy face, LORD, will I seek.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 119:60]- I made haste, and delayed not to keep thy commandments.*
    - 3.) *[Psalm 18:44]- As soon as they hear of me, they shall obey me: the strangers shall submit themselves unto me.*
  - b. It is FREE and WILLING obedience.
    - 1.) *[Acts 21:13]- Then Paul answered, What mean ye to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 110:3]- Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power, in the beauties of holiness from the womb of the morning: thou hast the dew of thy youth.*
    - 3.) *[2 Corinthians 8:3]- For to their power, I bear record, yea, and beyond their power they were willing of themselves;*
    - 4.) *[1 Chronicles 29:6-7]- Then the chief of the fathers and princes of the tribes of Israel and the captains of thousands and of hundreds, with the rulers of the king's work, offered willingly, And gave for the service of the house of God of gold five thousand talents and ten thousand drams, and of silver ten thousand talents, and of brass eighteen thousand talents, and one hundred thousand talents of iron.*
    - 5.) *[1 Timothy 6:18]- That they do good, that they be rich in good works, ready to distribute, willing to communicate;*
    - 6.) *[1 Thessalonians 2:8]- So being affectionately desirous of you, we were willing to have imparted unto you, not the gospel of God only, but also our own souls, because ye were dear unto us.*
  - c. It is CHEERFUL and DELIGHTFUL obedience.
    - 1.) *[Psalm 40:8]- I delight to do thy will, O my God: yea, thy law is within my heart.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 112:1]- Praise ye the LORD. Blessed is the man that feareth the LORD, that delighteth greatly in his commandments.*
    - 3.) *[Psalm 119:16,35,47,143]- I will delight myself in thy statutes: I will not forget thy word. Make me to go in the path of thy commandments; for therein do I delight. And I will delight myself in thy commandments, which I have loved. Trouble and anguish have taken hold on me: yet thy commandments are my delights.*
    - 4.) *[Psalm 19:5,11]- Which is as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, and rejoiceth as a strong man to run a race. Moreover by them is thy servant warned: and in keeping of them there is great reward.*
5. The obedience, which accompanies salvation, is RESOLUTE obedience.
- a. *[Joshua 24.15]- And if it seem evil unto you to serve the LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD.*
  - b. *[Hebrews 11:38]- (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the earth.*

- c. *[Acts 20:23]- Save that the Holy Ghost witnesseth in every city, saying that bonds and afflictions abide me.*
  - d. *[Galatians 1:15-16]- But when it pleased God, who separated me from my mother's womb, and called me by his grace, To reveal his Son in me, that I might preach him among the heathen; immediately I conferred not with flesh and blood:*
  - e. *[Acts 4:19-20,29]- But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you more than unto God, judge ye. For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard. And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto thy servants, that with all boldness they may speak thy word,*
  - f. *[Acts 5:40-42]- And to him they agreed: and when they had called the apostles, and beaten them, they commanded that they should not speak in the name of Jesus, and let them go. And they departed from the presence of the council, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer shame for his name. And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.*
  - g. *[Psalm 44:13-14]- Thou makest us a reproach to our neighbours, a scorn and a derision to them that are round about us. Thou makest us a byword among the heathen, a shaking of the head among the people.*
  - h. *[Jeremiah 44:15-17]- Then all the men which knew that their wives had burned incense unto other gods, and all the women that stood by, a great multitude, even all the people that dwelt in the land of Egypt, in Pathros, answered Jeremiah, saying, As for the word that thou hast spoken unto us in the name of the LORD, we will not hearken unto thee. But we will certainly do whatsoever thing goeth forth out of our own mouth, to burn incense unto the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings unto her, as we have done, we, and our fathers, our kings, and our princes, in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem: for then had we plenty of victuals, and were well, and saw no evil.*
  - i. *[Psalm 119:106]- I have sworn, and I will perform it, that I will keep thy righteous judgments.*
6. The end of that obedience which accompanies salvation is, divine glory.
- a. *[Romans 14:7-8]- For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself. For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's.*
  - b. *[Isaiah 30:33]- For Tophet is ordained of old; yea, for the king it is prepared; he hath made it deep and large: the pile thereof is fire and much wood; the breath of the LORD, like a stream of brimstone, doth kindle it.*
  - c. *[Isaiah 33:14]- The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness hath surprised the hypocrites. Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire? who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings?*
7. That obedience, which accompanies salvation, is a CONSTANT obedience.
- a. *[Psalm 119:112]- I have inclined mine heart to perform thy statutes alway, even unto the end.*
  - b. *[Psalm 44:17-19]- All this is come upon us; yet have we not forgotten thee, neither have we dealt falsely in thy covenant. Our heart is not turned back, neither have our steps declined from thy way; Though thou hast sore broken us in the place of dragons, and covered us with the shadow of death.*
  - c. *[Philippians 2:12]- Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.*
  - d. *[Job 27:10]- Will he delight himself in the Almighty? will he always call upon God?*
  - e. *[1 Samuel 6:12]- And the kine took the straight way to the way of Bethshemesh, and went along the highway, lowing as they went, and turned not aside to the right hand or*

*to the left; and the lords of the Philistines went after them unto the border of Bethshemesh.*

- f. *[Psalm 119:3-4]- They also do no iniquity: they walk in his ways. Thou hast commanded us to keep thy precepts diligently.*
8. PASSIVE obedience accompanies salvation as well as active.
- a. *[2 Timothy 3:12]- Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.*
  - b. *[2 Timothy 2:12]- If we suffer, we shall also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny us:*
  - c. *[Romans 9:17-18]- For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might shew my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth. Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy, and whom he will he hardeneth.*
  - d. *[Acts 14:22]- Confirming the souls of the disciples, and exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.*
  - e. *[Acts 21:13]- Then Paul answered, What mean ye to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.*
  - f. *[Philippians 3:8]- Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,*
- E. What love that is, which accompanies salvation.
- 1. That love which accompanies salvation is a SUPERLATIVE love, a TRANSCENDENT love.
    - a. *[Matthew 10:37-38]- He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me.*
    - b. *[Luke 14:26-27,34]- If any man come to me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple. And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple. Salt is good: but if the salt have lost his savour, wherewith shall it be seasoned?*
    - c. *[Psalm 73:25]- Whom have I in heaven but thee? and there is none upon earth that I desire beside thee.*
    - d. *[Colossians 1:19]- For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;*
    - e. *[Colossians 2:9]- For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.*
    - f. *[John 10:1,17-18]- Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up some other way, the same is a thief and a robber. Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life, that I might take it again. No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father.*
    - g. *[Song of Solomon 5:10-16]- My beloved is white and ruddy, the chiefest among ten thousand. His head is as the most fine gold, his locks are bushy, and black as a raven. His eyes are as the eyes of doves by the rivers of waters, washed with milk, and fitly set. His cheeks are as a bed of spices, as sweet flowers: his lips like lilies, dropping sweet smelling myrrh. His hands are as gold rings set with the beryl: his belly is as bright ivory overlaid with sapphires. His legs are as pillars of marble, set upon sockets of fine gold: his countenance is as Lebanon, excellent as the cedars. His mouth is most sweet: yea, he is altogether lovely. This is my beloved, and this is my friend, O daughters of Jerusalem.*
  - 2. That love which accompanies salvation is OBEDIENTIAL love; it is OPERATIVE and WORKING love.



- a. *[John 14:21]- He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.*
  - b. *[Psalm 116:1]- I love the LORD, because he hath heard my voice and my supplications.*
  - c. *[Psalm 116:2,9,13-14,17]- Because he hath inclined his ear unto me, therefore will I call upon him as long as I live. I will walk before the LORD in the land of the living. I will take the cup of salvation, and call upon the name of the LORD. I will pay my vows unto the LORD now in the presence of all his people. I will offer to thee the sacrifice of thanksgiving, and will call upon the name of the LORD.*
  - d. *[Hebrews 6:10]- For God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have shewed toward his name, in that ye have ministered to the saints, and do minister.*
  - e. *"Love sets faith upon drawing from Christ, and patience upon waiting on Christ, and humility upon submitting to Christ, and godly sorrow upon mourning over Christ, and self-denial upon forsaking of the nearest and dearest comforts for Christ."*
  - f. *[2 Corinthians 5:14]- For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:*
3. That love which accompanies salvation is a SINCERE and INCORRUPT love:
    - a. *[Ephesians 6:24]- Grace be with all them that love our Lord Jesus Christ in sincerity. Amen.*
    - b. *[Matthew 21:9,15]- And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest. And when the chief priests and scribes saw the wonderful things that he did, and the children crying in the temple, and saying, Hosanna to the son of David; they were sore displeased,*
    - c. *[Song of Solomon 1:3-4]- Because of the savour of thy good ointments thy name is as ointment poured forth, therefore do the virgins love thee. Draw me, we will run after thee: the king hath brought me into his chambers: we will be glad and rejoice in thee, we will remember thy love more than wine: the upright love thee.*
  4. That love which accompanies salvation is a VEHEMENT love, an ARDENT love.
    - a. *[Song of Solomon 1:7]- Tell me, O thou whom my soul loveth, where thou feedest, where thou makest thy flock to rest at noon: for why should I be as one that turneth aside by the flocks of thy companions?*
    - b. *[Isaiah 26:8-9]- Yea, in the way of thy judgments, O LORD, have we waited for thee; the desire of our soul is to thy name, and to the remembrance of thee. With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee early: for when thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn righteousness.*
    - c. *[Song of Solomon 2:5]- Stay me with flagons, comfort me with apples: for I am sick of love.*
  5. That love, which accompanies salvation, is LASTING love, it is PERMANENT love.
    - a. *[Revelation 12:11]- And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.*
    - b. *[Ephesians 6:24]- Grace be with all them that love our Lord Jesus Christ in sincerity. Amen.*
    - c. *[Song of Solomon 8:6-7]- Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love is strong as death; jealousy is cruel as the grave: the coals thereof are coals of fire, which hath a most vehement flame. Many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it: if a man would give all the substance of his house for love, it would utterly be contemned.*

- d. *“Many men's love to Christ is like the morning dew; it is like Jonah's gourd, which came up in a night and vanished in a night. But that love which accompanies salvation is like Ruth's love, a lasting and an abiding love.*
  - e. *[Ruth 1:16]- And Ruth said, Intreat me not to leave thee, or to return from following after thee: for whither thou goest, I will go; and where thou lodgest, I will lodge: thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God: Where thou diest, will I die, and there will I be buried: the LORD do so to me, and more also, if ought but death part thee and me.*
6. That love, which accompanies salvation, is an ABOUNDING love, an INCREASING love.
    - a. *“Love in a saint, is like the waters in Noah's time, which rose higher and higher. The very nature of true love is to abound and rise higher and higher.”*
    - b. *[Philippians 1:9]- And this I pray, that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and in all judgment;*
    - c. *[Luke 7:47-48]- Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, the same loveth little.*
    - d. *[Numbers 33:29]- And they went from Mithcah, and pitched in Hashmonah.*
    - e. *“Mr. Welch, a Suffolk minister, weeping at table, and being asked the reason of it, answered, it was because he could love Christ no more. The true lovers of Christ can never rise high enough in their love to Christ; they count a little love to be no love; great love to be but little love; strong love to be but weak love; and the highest love to be infinitely below the worth of Christ, the beauty and glory of Christ, the fullness, sweetness, and goodness of Christ. Their greatest misery in this life is, that they love Christ so little, though they are so much beloved by him.”*
  7. That love which accompanies salvation, is OPEN love, it is MANIFEST love;
    - a. Love to Christ makes the soul even ready to break, in longing after a further, clearer, and fuller enjoyment of Christ.
      - 1.) *[Revelation 22:20]- He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.*
      - 2.) *[Song of Solomon 8:14]- Make haste, my beloved, and be thou like to a roe or to a young hart upon the mountains of spices.*
      - 3.) *[Philippians 1:23]- For I am in a strait betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better:*
    - b. Love to Christ shows itself by working the soul to abase itself, that Christ may be exalted.
      - 1.) *[Revelation 4:10-11]- The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.*
      - 2.) *[John 3:26-30]- And they came unto John, and said unto him, Rabbi, he that was with thee beyond Jordan, to whom thou barest witness, behold, the same baptizeth, and all men come to him. John answered and said, A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven. Ye yourselves bear me witness, that I said, I am not the Christ, but that I am sent before him. He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled. He must increase, but I must decrease.*
      - 3.) *[Philippians 3:7-8]- But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,*

- c. Love shows itself by working the soul to be cheerful and resolute, to be patient and constant in sufferings for Christ:
  - 1.) *[1 Corinthians 13:7]- Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.*
  - 2.) *[Acts 21:13]- Then Paul answered, What mean ye to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.*
- d. Love shows itself by working the soul to be pleased or displeased, as Christ is pleased or displeased.
  - 1.) *[1 John 4:17]- Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the Day of Judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 119:113,128,163]- I hate vain thoughts: but thy law do I love. Therefore I esteem all thy precepts concerning all things to be right; and I hate every false way. I hate and abhor lying: but thy law do I love.*
  - 3.) *[1 Corinthians 12:12]- For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ.*
- e. Love to Christ shows itself sometimes by working the lovers of Christ to expose themselves to suffering, to save Christ from suffering in his glory;
  - 1.) *[Hebrews 11:24-25]- By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;*
  - 2.) *[Revelation 12:11]- And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.*
- f. That love shows itself sometimes by working the lovers of Christ to be affected and afflicted with the dishonours which are done to Christ:
  - 1.) *[Psalm 119:136]- Rivers of waters run down mine eyes, because they keep not thy law.*
  - 2.) *[Jeremiah 9:1-2]- Oh that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people! Oh that I had in the wilderness a lodging place of wayfaring men; that I might leave my people, and go from them! for they be all adulterers, an assembly of treacherous men.*
  - 3.) *[2 Peter 2:7-8]- And delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked: (For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed his righteous soul from day to day with their unlawful deeds;)*
  - 4.) *[Psalm 69:9]- For the zeal of thine house hath eaten me up; and the reproaches of them that reproached thee are fallen upon me.*
  - 5.) *[Acts 9:4]- And he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?*
- g. That love shows itself by working the soul to observe with a curious critical eye Christ's countenance and demeanour, and by causing the soul to be sad or cheerful, as Christ's demeanour and countenance is towards the soul.
  - 1.) *[Song of Solomon 3:4]- It was but a little that I passed from them, but I found him whom my soul loveth: I held him, and would not let him go, until I had brought him into my mother's house, and into the chamber of her that conceived me.*
  - 2.) *[Isaiah 61:10]- I will greatly rejoice in the LORD, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.*

- h. That love reaches forth a hand of kindness to those who bear the image of Christ.
- i. Properties of that love to the saints.
  - 1.) True love to the saints is SPIRITUAL.
    - a.) *[Colossians 1:8]- Who also declared unto us your love in the Spirit.*
    - b.) *[Psalm 45:13]- The king's daughter is all glorious within: her clothing is of wrought gold.*
  - 2.) True love to the saints is UNIVERSAL.
    - a.) *[Philippians 4:21]- Salute every saint in Christ Jesus. The brethren which are with me greet you.*
    - b.) *[Ephesians 1:15]- Wherefore I also, after I heard of your faith in the Lord Jesus, and love unto all the saints,*
    - c.) *[Colossians 1:4]- Since we heard of your faith in Christ Jesus, and of the love which ye have to all the saints,*
    - d.) *[James 2:1-2,5]- My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Lord of glory, with respect of persons. For if there come unto your assembly a man with a gold ring, in goodly apparel, and there come in also a poor man in vile raiment; Hearken, my beloved brethren, Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him?*
  - 3.) Our love to the saints is right, when we love them and DELIGHT in them.
    - a.) *[Psalm 16:3]- But to the saints that are in the earth, and to the excellent, in whom is all my delight.*
    - b.) *"Well, as the fairest day has its clouds, the finest linen its spots, the richest jewels their flaws, the sweetest fruits their worms—so when precious Christians are under temptations, they may, and too often do envy and repine at those excellent graces, abilities, and excellencies which cloud, darken, and outshine their own. The best of men are too full of pride and self-love, and that makes them sometimes cast dirt and disgrace upon that excellency that they themselves lack."*
  - 4.) True love to saints is CONSTANT.
    - a.) *[1 Corinthians 13:8]- Charity never faileth: but whether there be prophecies, they shall fail; whether there be tongues, they shall cease; whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away.*
    - b.) *[Hebrews 13:1]- Let brotherly love continue.*
    - c.) *[Proverbs 17:17]- A friend loveth at all times, and a brother is born for adversity.*
    - d.) *"True love is like to that of Ruth's to Naomi, and that of Jonathan's to David—permanent and constant."*
    - e.) *[Job 6:15-17]- My brethren have dealt deceitfully as a brook, and as the stream of brooks they pass away; Which are blackish by reason of the ice, and wherein the snow is hid: What time they wax warm, they vanish: when it is hot, they are consumed out of their place.*
    - f.) *"It is observed by Josephus of the Samaritans, that whenever the Jews' affairs prospered, they would be their friends, and profess much love to them; but if the Jews were in trouble, and needed their assistance, then they would not own them, nor have anything to do with them. This age is full of such Samaritans, yet, such as truly love will always love."*
- j. That love does manifest and show itself by working the soul to be quiet and still under Christ's rebukes.
  - 1.) *[John 21:16-18]- He saith to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my sheep. He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest*

*thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me? And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep. Verily, verily, I say unto thee, When thou wast young, thou girdest thyself, and walkedst whither thou wouldst: but when thou shalt be old, thou shalt stretch forth thy hands, and another shall gird thee, and carry thee whither thou wouldst not.*

- 2.) *[1 Samuel 3:18]- And Samuel told him every whit, and hid nothing from him. And he said, It is the LORD: let him do what seemeth him good.*
  - 3.) *[Leviticus 10:3]- Then Moses said unto Aaron, This is it that the LORD spake, saying, I will be sanctified in them that come nigh me, and before all the people I will be glorified. And Aaron held his peace.*
  - 4.) *[Psalm 39:9]- I was dumb, I opened not my mouth; because thou didst it.*
  - 5.) *[Revelation 3:19]- As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent.*
  - 6.) *[Psalm 71:20-21]- Thou, which hast shewed me great and sore troubles, shalt quicken me again, and shalt bring me up again from the depths of the earth. Thou shalt increase my greatness, and comfort me on every side.*
  - 7.) *[Hosea 4:17]- Ephraim is joined to idols: let him alone.*
- k. That love shows itself by working the heart to be affected and afflicted with the least dishonours that are done to Christ.
- 1.) *[1 Samuel 24:5]- And it came to pass afterward, that David's heart smote him, because he had cut off Saul's skirt.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 7:15]- For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I.*
  - 3.) *"Love will make a man aim at angelic purity and perfect innocence; love will strive to be getting up to the top of Jacob's ladder; love can rest in nothing below perfection; love makes a man look more at what he should be, than at what he is; it makes a man strive as for life, to imitate the highest examples, and to write after the choicest copies. Love fears every approach of sin; it trembles at the appearance of sin; it does not, it cannot allow itself to do anything which looks like sin; it hates "the garment spotted with the flesh;" it shuns the occasions of sin as it shuns hell itself. This is the divine sensitivity of a Christian's love. Love says—it is better to die with hunger, than to eat that which is offered to idols. "The sin, and the coat of sin, is to be hated," says Ambrose."*
  - 4.) *"Marcus Arethusius, out of his love to Christ and hatred of idolatry, would not give one halfpenny toward the building of an idol's temple, though he was punished with intolerable torments. Love knows that the least evils are contrary to the greatest good; they are contrary to the nature of Christ, the commands of Christ, the spirit of Christ, the grace of Christ, the glory of Christ, the blood of Christ."*
- l. That love will show itself by keeping the doors of the heart shut against those treacherous lovers that would draw the heart from Christ.
- 1.) *"Love is a golden key to let in Christ—and a strong lock to keep out others. Though many may knock at love's door, yet love will open to none but Christ:"*
  - 2.) *[Song of Solomon 5:6]- I opened to my beloved; but my beloved had withdrawn himself, and was gone: my soul failed when he spake: I sought him, but I could not find him; I called him, but he gave me no answer.*
  - 3.) *[Song of Solomon 8:7]- Many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it: if a man would give all the substance of his house for love, it would utterly be contemned.*
  - 4.) *[Acts 8:20]- But Peter said unto him, Thy money perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money.*

- 5.) *[Song of Solomon 1:13]- A bundle of myrrh is my well-beloved unto me; he shall lie all night betwixt my breasts.*
- m. That love shows itself by secret visits, by secret expressions of love.
- 1.) *[Song of Solomon 2:14]- O my dove, that art in the clefts of the rock, in the secret places of the stairs, let me see thy countenance, let me hear thy voice; for sweet is thy voice, and thy countenance is comely.*
  - 2.) *[Matthew 6:6]- But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.*
  - 3.) *[Matthew 6:2]- Therefore when thou doest thine alms, do not sound a trumpet before thee, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward.*
  - 4.) *[Song of Solomon 7:11]- Come, my beloved, let us go forth into the field; let us lodge in the villages.*
- n. That love shows itself by breathing after more clear evidence and full assurance of Christ's love to the soul.
- 1.) *"Divine love would gladly have her drop turned into an ocean; her spark into a flame; her penny into a pound; her mite into a million."*
  - 2.) *[Song of Solomon 1:2]- Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth: for thy love is better than wine.*
  - 3.) *[Song of Solomon 8:6]- Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love is strong as death; jealousy is cruel as the grave: the coals thereof are coals of fire, which hath a most vehement flame.*
  - 4.) The Seal and Signet.
    - a.) The seal, you know, is for ratifying, confirming, and making sure of things.
    - b.) Signets, among the Jews were used not as ornaments only—but as monuments of love that were continually in sight and remembrance.
      - 1.) *[Exodus 28:11-12,21,29]- With the work of an engraver in stone, like the engravings of a signet, shalt thou engrave the two stones with the names of the children of Israel: thou shalt make them to be set in ouches of gold. And thou shalt put the two stones upon the shoulders of the ephod for stones of memorial unto the children of Israel: and Aaron shall bear their names before the LORD upon his two shoulders for a memorial. And the stones shall be with the names of the children of Israel, twelve, according to their names, like the engravings of a signet; every one with his name shall they be according to the twelve tribes. And Aaron shall bear the names of the children of Israel in the breastplate of judgment upon his heart, when he goeth in unto the holy place, for a memorial before the LORD continually.*
    - c.) Great men have their signet rings upon their hands in precious esteem:
      - 1.) *[Jeremiah 22:24]- As I live, saith the LORD, though Coniah the son of Jehoiakim king of Judah were the signet upon my right hand, yet would I pluck thee thence;*
- o. That love shows itself by working a true lover of Christ to commit his richest treasures, his choicest jewels, to the care and custody of Christ.
- 1.) *[Psalm 31:15]- My times are in thy hand: deliver me from the hand of mine enemies, and from them that persecute me.*
  - 2.) *[2 Timothy 1:12]- For the which cause I also suffer these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day.*

- 3.) *[2 Timothy 4:7-8]- I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith: Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
- 4.) *[Micah 7:8-9]- Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the LORD shall be a light unto me. I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness.*
- 5.) *[Deuteronomy 6:22]- And the LORD shewed signs and wonders, great and sore, upon Egypt, upon Pharaoh, and upon all his household, before our eyes:*

F. What prayer that is, which accompanies salvation.

1. Prayer is a divine worship whereon, we speak to God in faith, humility, sincerity, and fervency of spirit, through the mediation of Christ.
  - a. The matter of prayer.
    - 1.) Petition.
    - 2.) Deprecation.
    - 3.) Intercession.
    - 4.) Expostulation.
  - b. The requisites of prayer.
    - 1.) The person must be righteous:
      - a.) *[James 5:16]- Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.*
      - b.) *[John 9:31]- Now we know that God heareth not sinners: but if any man be a worshipper of God, and doeth his will, him he heareth.*
      - c.) *[Psalm 50:16-17]- But unto the wicked God saith, What hast thou to do to declare my statutes, or that thou shouldest take my covenant in thy mouth? Seeing thou hatest instruction, and casteth my words behind thee.*
    - 2.) The matter of your prayer must be according to God's will.
      - a.) *[1 John 5:14]- And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us:*
      - b.) *[Romans 8:27]- And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.*
  - 3.) As the matter of your prayer must be Scriptural, so the MANNER of your prayer must be right.
    - a.) To pray UNDERSTANDINGLY, to pray knowingly:
      - 1.) *[1 Corinthians 14:15]- What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also.*
      - 2.) *[John 4:22]- Ye worship ye know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews.*
      - 3.) *[Proverbs 19:2]- Also, that the soul be without knowledge, it is not good; and he that hasteth with his feet sinneth.*
    - b.) To pray BELIEVINGLY.
      - 1.) *[Hebrews 11:6]- But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.*

- 2.) ***[Mark 11:24]- Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.***
  - 3.) *"God will never let the hand of faith, go empty away in prayer. Faith is God's darling, and he never fails to give it a worthy portion, a Benjamin's portion, a Hannah's portion, a double portion:"*
  - 4.) ***[James 1:5-7]- If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord.***
  - 5.) *"It is reported in the life of Luther, that when he prayed it was with so much reverence, as if he were praying to God; and with so much boldness, as if he had been speaking to his friend."*
  - 6.) *"Faith in prayer makes a man divinely familiar and bold with God in prayer. That prayer which has not the image and stamp of faith upon it, is no prayer in divine account."*
  - 7.) *"The sweetest flowers of paradise are only acceptable to God, as they are offered to him by the hand of faith."*
  - 8.) *"Augustus, when a poor man came to present a petition to him with his hand shaking and trembling out of fear, the emperor was much displeased, and said, "It is not fit that any should come with a petition to a king as if a man were giving meat to an elephant; that is, afraid to be destroyed by him."*
- c.) To pray INTENSELY, FERVENTLY, EARNESTLY.
- 1.) ***[James 5:16]- Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.***
  - 2.) *"As a painted fire is no fire, a dead man no man—so a cold prayer is no prayer."*
  - 3.) ***[Genesis 32:24-27]- And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day. And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him. And he said, Let me go, for the day breaketh. And he said, I will not let thee go, except thou bless me. And he said unto him, What is thy name? And he said, Jacob.***
  - 4.) ***[Hosea 12:4]- Yea, he had power over the angel, and prevailed: he wept, and made supplication unto him: he found him in Bethel, and there he spake with us;***
  - 5.) *"It is not the labour of the lips—but the travail of the heart; it is not the pouring forth a flood of words—but the pouring out of the soul, which makes a man a prince, a prevailer with God. A man who would gain victory over God in prayer, must strain every string of his heart; he must, in beseeching God, besiege him, and so get the better of him; he must strive in prayer even to an agony; he must be like importunate beggars, who will not be put off with frowns, or silence, or sad answers."*
  - 6.) *"I have read of one who, being sensible of his own dullness and coldness in prayer, reprov'd himself thus: "What! do you think that Jonah prayed thus when he was in the belly of hell? or Daniel, when he was in the lions' den? or the thief, when he was upon the cross?" and I may add, or the three children, when they were in the fiery furnace? or the apostles, when they were in bonds and prisons. Oh! that Christians would reprove themselves out of their cold prayers, and chide themselves into a better and a warmer frame of spirit when they make their supplications before the Lord."*



- d.) To pray ASSIDUOUSLY, CONSTANTLY, as well as fervently.
- 1.) *[Luke 18:1]- And he spake a parable unto them to this end, that men ought always to pray, and not to faint;*
  - 2.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:17]- Pray without ceasing.*
  - 3.) *[Ephesians 6:18]- Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;*
  - 4.) *"Our daily weaknesses, our daily wants, our daily fears, our daily dangers, our daily temptations, etc., call for our daily prayers."*
  - 5.) *[Romans 12:12]- Rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer;*
  - 6.) *[Song of Solomon 3:4]- It was but a little that I passed from them, but I found him whom my soul loveth: I held him, and would not let him go, until I had brought him into my mother's house, and into the chamber of her that conceived me.*
- e.) To pray SINCERELY.
- 1.) *[Psalm 17:1]- Hear the right, O LORD, attend unto my cry, give ear unto my prayer, that goeth not out of feigned lips.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 145:18]- The LORD is nigh unto all them that call upon him, to all that call upon him in truth.*
  - 3.) *[Psalm 51:6]- Behold, thou desirest truth in the inward parts: and in the hidden part thou shalt make me to know wisdom.*
  - 4.) *"Ah, Christians! the more sincere you are, the more will prayer be your food and drink; and the more prayer is a delight and pleasure to you, the more will you be the pleasure and delight of God, who delights in those who delight in his service, and who count his work better than wages."*
  - 5.) *[John 16:24]- Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full.*
  - 6.) *"Christ has a full purse, a noble heart, and a liberal hand."*
- 4.) Your prayer must be to a good END.
- a.) *[1 Corinthians 10:31]- Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.*
  - b.) *"Ah, Christians! it is not a flood of words, nor high strains of wit, nor vehemency of affections in prayer—but holy and gracious ends, which will render prayer acceptable and honourable to God, comfortable and profitable to yourselves and others; yes, the directing of one prayer to divine glory does more torture and torment Satan than all the prayers in the world that are directed to ends below divine glory. It is not simply prayer—but the soul's aiming at divine glory in prayer, that adds to Christ's crown, and Satan's hell."*
  - c.) *[Isaiah 1:11]- To what purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the LORD: I am full of the burnt offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he goats.*
  - d.) *[Zechariah 7:6]- And when ye did eat, and when ye did drink, did not ye eat for yourselves, and drink for yourselves?*
  - e.) *[Amos 5:22]- Though ye offer me burnt offerings and your meat offerings, I will not accept them: neither will I regard the peace offerings of your fat beasts.*
  - f.) *[Hosea 7:14]- And they have not cried unto me with their heart, when they howled upon their beds: they assemble themselves for corn and wine, and they rebel against me.*
  - g.) *"Many heathens, as Aristides, Cato, Themistocles, with divers others, did sincerely many great services for the common good, and not for their own gain; but yet they*

*could not hit the mark—the glory of God; and so their most glorious actions were but glorious sins.”*

2. Prayer better the whole man.
  - a. *“Prayer is a spiritual chair, wherein the soul sits down at the feet of the Lord, to receive the influences of his grace. Prayer is the regal gate by which the Lord enters into the heart, comforting, quieting, strengthening, quickening, and raising of it.”*
3. The difference that is between the prayers of the godly and the wicked.
  - a. Gracious souls do trade and deal with God in prayer, only upon the account and credit of Christ.
    - 1.) *[Revelation 4:10-11]- The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.*
    - 2.) *[John 14:13-14]- And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do it.*
    - 3.) *[John 15:16]- Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and that your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you.*
    - 4.) *[Ephesians 2:18]- For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.*
    - 5.) *[Ephesians 1:6]- To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.*
    - 6.) *[Isaiah 58:2-3]- Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their God: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to God. Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours.*
    - 7.) *[Luke 18:11-12]- The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess.*
    - 8.) *[Matthew 6:23]- But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If therefore the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!*
  - b. Souls truly gracious pray more to get off their sins, than they do to get off their chains.
    - 1.) *[Acts 20:23]- Save that the Holy Ghost witnesseth in every city, saying that bonds and afflictions abide me.*
    - 2.) *[Romans 7:23]- But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.*
    - 3.) *[Psalm 51:4]- Against thee, thee only, have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight: that thou mightest be justified when thou speakest, and be clear when thou judgest.*
    - 4.) *[Psalm 78:34]- When he slew them, then they sought him: and they returned and enquired early after God.*
    - 5.) *[Zechariah 7:5-7]- Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When ye fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh month, even those seventy years, did ye at all fast unto me, even to me? And when ye did eat, and when ye did drink, did not ye eat for yourselves, and drink for yourselves? Should ye not hear the words which the LORD hath cried by the former prophets, when Jerusalem was inhabited and in prosperity, and the cities thereof round about her, when men inhabited the south and the plain?*

- 6.) *[Isaiah 26:16-17]- LORD, in trouble have they visited thee, they poured out a prayer when thy chastening was upon them. Like as a woman with child, that draweth near the time of her delivery, is in pain, and crieth out in her pangs; so have we been in thy sight, O LORD.*
- c. The stream and cream of a gracious man's spirit runs most out in prayer after spiritual and heavenly things.
- 1.) *[Psalm 4:6-7]- There be many that say, Who will shew us any good? LORD, lift thou up the light of thy countenance upon us. Thou hast put gladness in my heart, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 27:4]- One thing have I desired of the LORD, that will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the LORD all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of the LORD, and to enquire in his temple.*
  - 3.) *[Hosea 7:14]- And they have not cried unto me with their heart, when they howled upon their beds: they assemble themselves for corn and wine, and they rebel against me.*
  - 4.) *[Zechariah 7:5-7]- Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When ye fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh month, even those seventy years, did ye at all fast unto me, even to me? And when ye did eat, and when ye did drink, did not ye eat for yourselves, and drink for yourselves? Should ye not hear the words which the LORD hath cried by the former prophets, when Jerusalem was inhabited and in prosperity, and the cities thereof round about her, when men inhabited the south and the plain?*
  - 5.) *[James 4:3]- Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss, that ye may consume it upon your lusts.*
- d. A gracious soul looks and lives more upon God in prayer, than upon his prayer.
- 1.) *[Psalm 5:3]- My voice shalt thou hear in the morning, O LORD; in the morning will I direct my prayer unto thee, and will look up.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 85:8]- I will hear what God the LORD will speak: for he will speak peace unto his people, and to his saints: but let them not turn again to folly.*
  - 3.) *"Wicked men would have God to be all ear to hear what they desire, when themselves have never an ear to hear what he speaks. But deaf ears shall always be attended with dumb answers. God's justice always makes mercy dumb, when sin has made the sinner deaf."*
- e. No discouragements can take gracious souls off from prayer.
- 1.) *[Psalm 40:1-2]- I waited patiently for the LORD; and he inclined unto me, and heard my cry. He brought me up also out of an horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a rock, and established my goings.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 44:10,13-14,22-23]- Thou makest us to turn back from the enemy: and they which hate us spoil for themselves. Thou makest us a reproach to our neighbours, a scorn and a derision to them that are round about us. Thou makest us a byword among the heathen, a shaking of the head among the people. Yea, for thy sake are we killed all the day long; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter. Awake, why sleepest thou, O Lord? arise, cast us not off for ever.*
  - 3.) *[Matthew 15:22-28]- And, behold, a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, Have mercy on me, O Lord, thou son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil. But he answered her not a word. And his disciples came and besought him, saying, Send her away; for she crieth after us. But he answered and said, I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel. Then came she and worshipped him, saying, Lord, help me. But he answered and said, It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it to dogs. And she said, Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table.*

*Then Jesus answered and said unto her, O woman, great is thy faith: be it unto thee even as thou wilt. And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.*

- 4.) *[Malachi 3:14]- Ye have said, It is vain to serve God: and what profit is it that we have kept his ordinance, and that we have walked mournfully before the LORD of hosts?*
  - 5.) *[Isaiah 58:1-3]- Cry aloud, spare not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and shew my people their transgression, and the house of Jacob their sins. Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their God: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to God. Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours.*
  - 6.) *[Amos 8:3-5]- And the songs of the temple shall be howlings in that day, saith the Lord GOD: there shall be many dead bodies in every place; they shall cast them forth with silence. Hear this, O ye that swallow up the needy, even to make the poor of the land to fail, Saying, When will the new moon be gone, that we may sell corn? and the sabbath, that we may set forth wheat, making the ephah small, and the shekel great, and falsifying the balances by deceit?*
  - 7.) *[Job 27:9-10]- Will God hear his cry when trouble cometh upon him? Will he delight himself in the Almighty? will he always call upon God?*
- f. When a gracious man prays, he has his heart in his prayer.
- 1.) *[Psalm 42:4]- When I remember these things, I pour out my soul in me: for I had gone with the multitude, I went with them to the house of God, with the voice of joy and praise, with a multitude that kept holyday.*
  - 2.) *[1 Samuel 1:15]- And Hannah answered and said, No, my lord, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit: I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but have poured out my soul before the LORD.*
  - 3.) *[1 Samuel 7:6]- And they gathered together to Mizpeh, and drew water, and poured it out before the LORD, and fasted on that day, and said there, We have sinned against the LORD. And Samuel judged the children of Israel in Mizpeh.*
  - 4.) *[Isaiah 26:8-9]- Yea, in the way of thy judgments, O LORD, have we waited for thee; the desire of our soul is to thy name, and to the remembrance of thee. With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee early: for when thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn righteousness.*
  - 5.) *[Deuteronomy 10:12]- And now, Israel, what doth the LORD thy God require of thee, but to fear the LORD thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the LORD thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,*
  - 6.) *[Isaiah 29:13]- Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men:*
  - 7.) *[Matthew 15:7-9]- Ye hypocrites, well did Esaias prophesy of you, saying, This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me. But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.*
  - 8.) *[Ezekiel 33:30-32]- Also, thou son of man, the children of thy people still are talking against thee by the walls and in the doors of the houses, and speak one to another, every one to his brother, saying, Come, I pray you, and hear what is the word that cometh forth from the LORD. And they come unto thee as the people cometh, and they sit before thee as my people, and they hear thy words, but they will not do them: for with their mouth they shew much love, but their heart goeth after their covetousness. And, lo, thou art unto them as a very lovely song of one that hath a*

*pleasant voice, and can play well on an instrument: for they hear thy words, but they do them not.*

9.) *[Zechariah 7:4-6]- Then came the word of the LORD of hosts unto me, saying, Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When ye fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh month, even those seventy years, did ye at all fast unto me, even to me? And when ye did eat, and when ye did drink, did not ye eat for yourselves, and drink for yourselves?*

10.) *[2 Chronicles 25:1-2]- Amaziah was twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Jehoaddan of Jerusalem. And he did that which was right in the sight of the LORD, but not with a perfect heart.*

g. Gracious souls usually come off from prayer, with hearts more disengaged from sin, and more vehemently set against it.

1.) *[Proverbs 7:14-15,24]- I have peace offerings with me; this day have I payed my vows. Therefore came I forth to meet thee, diligently to seek thy face, and I have found thee. Hearken unto me now therefore, O ye children, and attend to the words of my mouth.*

2.) *[Jeremiah 7:9-10]- Will ye steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely, and burn incense unto Baal, and walk after other gods whom ye know not; And come and stand before me in this house, which is called by my name, and say, We are delivered to do all these abominations?*

h. Gracious souls do more eye and observe how their own hearts are wrought upon in prayer.

1.) *"When they pray, they look with a curious eye upon their own spirits, they look with a narrow eye upon their own hearts, and observe how they are affected, melted, humbled, quickened, raised, spiritualized, and bettered by prayer."*

G. What perseverance that is, which accompanies salvation.

1. Perseverance in a holy PROFESSION.

a. *[Hebrews 4:14]- Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.*

b. *[Hebrews 10:23]- Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;)*

2. Perseverance and holy and spiritual GRACES.

a. *[1 Corinthians 13:13]- And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.*

b. *[Colossians 1:23]- If ye continue in the faith grounded and settled, and be not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which ye have heard, and which was preached to every creature which is under heaven; whereof I Paul am made a minister;*

c. *[1 Timothy 4:15]- Meditate upon these things; give thyself wholly to them; that thy profiting may appear to all.*

d. *[Hebrews 13:1]- Let brotherly love continue.*

e. *[Hebrews 11:13]- These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.*

f. *"No grace—no, not the most sparkling and shining grace, can bring a man to heaven of itself, without perseverance; not **faith**, which is the champion of grace, if it faints and fails; not **love**, which is the nurse of grace, if it declines and waxes cold; not **humility**, which is the adorning and beautifier of grace, if it continues not to the end; not **obedience**, not **repentance**, nor any other grace—except they persevere until the end"*

- g. *[Revelation 2:10]- Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.*
3. An abiding or continuing in the word or doctrine of Christ.
    - a. *[John 15:7]-If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you.*
    - b. *[1 John 2:14,24]- I have written unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one. Let that therefore abide in you, which ye have heard from the beginning. If that which ye have heard from the beginning shall remain in you, ye also shall continue in the Son, and in the Father.*
    - c. *[2 John 9]- Whosoever transgresseth, and abideth not in the doctrine of Christ, hath not God. He that abideth in the doctrine of Christ, he hath both the Father and the Son.*
    - d. *[John 8:31]- Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on him, If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed;*
    - e. *[1 Timothy 1:19-20]- Holding faith, and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made shipwreck: Of whom is Hymenaeus and Alexander; whom I have delivered unto Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme.*
    - f. *[1 Corinthians 5:5]- To deliver such an one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus.*
    - g. *[2 Peter 2:20-22]- For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning. For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them. But it is happened unto them according to the true proverb, The dog is turned to his own vomit again; and the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire.*
    - h. *[2 Timothy 3:13]- But evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving, and being deceived.*
  4. Perseverance in holy and gracious actions and motions.
    - a. *[Philippians 3:10-14]- That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death; If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead. Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus. Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before, I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.*
    - b. *[Isaiah 40:31]- But they that wait upon the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.*
    - c. *[Acts 13:43]- Now when the congregation was broken up, many of the Jews and religious proselytes followed Paul and Barnabas: who, speaking to them, persuaded them to continue in the grace of God.*
    - d. *[Acts 14:22]- Confirming the souls of the disciples, and exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.*
    - e. *[Acts 1:14]- These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication, with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with his brethren.*
    - f. *[Acts 2:42,46]- And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers. And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart,*

- g. *[1 Timothy 5:5]- Now she that is a widow indeed, and desolate, trusteth in God, and continueth in supplications and prayers night and day.*
- h. *[Romans 12:12]- Rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer;*
- i. *“Christians must work hard in a wilderness, before they sit down in paradise. They must make a constant progress in holiness before they enter into happiness.”*
- j. *[Psalm 44:16-20]- For the voice of him that reproacheth and blasphemeth; by reason of the enemy and avenger. All this is come upon us; yet have we not forgotten thee, neither have we dealt falsely in thy covenant. Our heart is not turned back, neither have our steps declined from thy way; Though thou hast sore broken us in the place of dragons, and covered us with the shadow of death. If we have forgotten the name of our God, or stretched out our hands to a strange god;*

H. Hope accompanies salvation.

- 1. That hope does accompany salvation.
  - a. *[Romans 8:24]- For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for?*
  - b. *[Galatians 5:5]- For we through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith.*
  - c. *[Ephesians 1:18]- The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,*
  - d. *[1 Thessalonians 5:8]- But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation.*
  - e. *[Titus 3:7]- That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.*
  - f. *[Titus 1:2]- In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;*
- 2. What that hope is, which accompanies salvation.
  - a. A grace of God whereby we expect good to come, waiting patiently until it comes.
    - 1.) He is the giver of it;
    - 2.) Whereby we expect good to come.
      - a.) It must be bonum—good.
      - b.) It must be Futurum—future.
      - c.) It must be Possibile—possible.
      - d.) It must be Arduum—hard or difficult to obtain.
    - 3.) Patiently waiting until it comes.
      - a.) *[Romans 8:25]- But if we hope for that we see not, then do we with patience wait for it.*
  - b. Is always conversant about holy and heavenly objects, as about God and Christ.
    - 1.) *[2 Corinthians 4:18]- While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 31:24]- Be of good courage, and he shall strengthen your heart, all ye that hope in the LORD.*
    - 3.) *[Psalm 33:22]- Let thy mercy, O LORD, be upon us, according as we hope in thee.*
    - 4.) *[Psalm 38:15]- For in thee, O LORD, do I hope: thou wilt hear, O Lord my God.*
    - 5.) *[Psalm 42:5]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted in me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him for the help of his countenance.*
    - 6.) *[Psalm 43:5]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted within me? hope in God: for I shall yet praise him, who is the health of my countenance, and my God.*
    - 7.) *[Psalm 39:7]- And now, Lord, what wait I for? my hope is in thee.*

- 8.) *[Psalm 71:5]- For thou art my hope, O Lord GOD: thou art my trust from my youth.*
  - 9.) *[Psalm 15:5]- He that putteth not out his money to usury, nor taketh reward against the innocent. He that doeth these things shall never be moved.*
  - 10.) *[1 Timothy 1:1]- Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the commandment of God our Saviour, and Lord Jesus Christ, which is our hope;*
  - 11.) *[Galatians 5:5]- For we through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith.*
  - 12.) *[1 Peter 1:21]- Who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God.*
  - 13.) *[Jeremiah 14:8]- O the hope of Israel, the saviour thereof in time of trouble, why shouldest thou be as a stranger in the land, and as a wayfaring man that turneth aside to tarry for a night?*
  - 14.) *[Jeremiah 17:13,17]- O LORD, the hope of Israel, all that forsake thee shall be ashamed, and they that depart from me shall be written in the earth, because they have forsaken the LORD, the fountain of living waters. Be not a terror unto me: thou art my hope in the day of evil.*
  - 15.) *[Psalm 119:49,74,81,114,147]- Remember the word unto thy servant, upon which thou hast caused me to hope. They that fear thee will be glad when they see me; because I have hoped in thy word. My soul fainteth for thy salvation: but I hope in thy word. Thou art my hiding place and my shield: I hope in thy word. I prevented the dawning of the morning, and cried: I hoped in thy word.*
  - 16.) *[Psalm 42:5]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted in me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him for the help of his countenance.*
  - 17.) *[Psalm 119:49-50]- Remember the word unto thy servant, upon which thou hast caused me to hope. This is my comfort in my affliction: for thy word hath quickened me.*
  - 18.) *[Romans 8:24-25]- For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for? But if we hope for that we see not, then do we with patience wait for it.*
  - 19.) *[Hebrews 11:13]- These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.*
  - 20.) *[Psalm 16:11]- Thou wilt shew me the path of life: in thy presence is fulness of joy; at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.*
  - 21.) *[Titus 3:7]- That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.*
  - 22.) *[Titus 2:13]- Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;*
  - 23.) *[Colossians 1:5]- For the hope which is laid up for you in heaven, whereof ye heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel;*
  - 24.) *[Ephesians 1:18]- The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,*
- c. Is grounded upon the firmest foundations,
- 1.) Promises of God.
    - a.) *[Proverbs 10:28]- The hope of the righteous shall be gladness: but the expectation of the wicked shall perish.*
  - 2.) Free grace of God.
    - a.) *[1 Peter 1:13]- Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ;*



- 3.) Infinite and glorious power of God.
  - a.) *[Romans 4:21]- And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.*
- 4.) Truth and faithfulness of God.
  - a.) *[2 Timothy 2:13]- If we believe not, yet he abideth faithful: he cannot deny himself.*
- d. Hopes of hypocrites and wicked men.
  - 1.) Outward profession, upon their lamps, though they have no oil,
    - a.) *[Matthew 25:3]- They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them:*
  - 2.) Duties and services, as the Jews, scribes, and Pharisees did,
    - a.) *[Isaiah 58:1-3]- Cry aloud, spare not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and shew my people their transgression, and the house of Jacob their sins. Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their God: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to God. Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours.*
    - b.) *[Matthew 6:1-2]- Take heed that ye do not your alms before men, to be seen of them: otherwise ye have no reward of your Father which is in heaven. Therefore when thou doest thine alms, do not sound a trumpet before thee, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward.*
  - 3.) Outward privileges, crying out, "The temple of the Lord, the temple of the Lord;" and sometimes they build their hopes upon.
  - 4.) Others' good opinion of them, and sometimes upon flashes of joy, and sometimes upon enlargements in duties, and sometimes upon the heat and vigour of their spirits in religious services.
- e. Hopes of the Saints.
  - 1.) God's love in my adoption
  - 2.) The truth of his promise.
  - 3.) His power of performance.
  - 4.) *[2 Timothy 1:12]- For the which cause I also suffer these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day.*
- f. Hope may be distinguished from all false hopes, by the excellent properties of it.
  - 1.) It elevates and raises the heart to live above, where its treasure is.
    - a.) *[Matthew 6:20-21]- But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal: For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.*
    - b.) *[Philippians 3:20]- For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:*
    - c.) *[Colossians 3:1]- If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.*
  - 2.) It will strengthen the soul against all afflictions, oppositions, and temptations:

- a.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:8]- But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation.*
  - b.) *[Romans 5:2-5]- By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God. And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience; And patience, experience; and experience, hope: And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us.*
  - c.) *[Daniel 3:27]- And the princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was an hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.*
  - d.) *[Psalm 4:6-7]- There be many that say, Who will shew us any good? LORD, lift thou up the light of thy countenance upon us. Thou hast put gladness in my heart, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased.*
  - e.) *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
  - f.) *[2 Corinthians 4:16-18]- For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day. For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory; While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.*
  - g.) *[Hebrews 11:10,14,16,25,32]- For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God. For they that say such things declare plainly that they seek a country. But now they desire a better country, that is, an heavenly: wherefore God is not ashamed to be called their God: for he hath prepared for them a city. Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthae; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets:*
- 3.) It makes the soul lively and active.
- a.) *[Psalm 119:166]- LORD, I have hoped for thy salvation, and done thy commandments.*
  - b.) *[1 Peter 1:3]- Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,*
  - c.) *[1 Corinthians 9:10]- Or saith he it altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, this is written: that he that ploweth should plow in hope; and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope.*
- 4.) It will make a man sit, Noah-like, quiet and still in the midst of all storms and tempests, in the midst of all disturbances and changes.
- a.) *[Job 11:18]- And thou shalt be secure, because there is hope; yea, thou shalt dig about thee, and thou shalt take thy rest in safety.*
  - b.) *[Hebrews 6:19-20]- Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil; Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.*
  - c.) *[Job 27:9-10]- Will God hear his cry when trouble cometh upon him? Will he delight himself in the Almighty? will he always call upon God?*

- 5.) It will work the soul to a quiet and patient waiting upon God for mercy, though God should delay the giving in of mercy.
  - a.) *[Romans 8:25]- But if we hope for that we see not, then do we with patience wait for it.*
  - b.) *[Psalm 130:5-6]- I wait for the LORD, my soul doth wait, and in his word do I hope. My soul waiteth for the Lord more than they that watch for the morning: I say, more than they that watch for the morning.*
  - c.) *[Romans 4:18-21]- Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be. And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sarah's womb: He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.*
  - d.) *[Habakkuk 2:1-3]- I will stand upon my watch, and set me upon the tower, and will watch to see what he will say unto me, and what I shall answer when I am reproved. And the LORD answered me, and said, Write the vision, and make it plain upon tables, that he may run that readeth it. For the vision is yet for an appointed time, but at the end it shall speak, and not lie: though it tarry, wait for it; because it will surely come, it will not tarry.*
  - e.) *[Hebrews 10:36-37]- For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.*
  - f.) *[1 Thessalonians 1:3]- Remembering without ceasing your work of faith, and labour of love, and patience of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ, in the sight of God and our Father;*
- 6.) It is soul-purifying hope.
  - a.) *[1 John 3:3]- And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.*
- 7.) It is permanent and lasting.
  - a.) *[Proverbs 14:32]- The wicked is driven away in his wickedness: but the righteous hath hope in his death.*
  - b.) *[Proverbs 10:28]- The hope of the righteous shall be gladness: but the expectation of the wicked shall perish.*
  - c.) *[Hebrews 3:6]- But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.*
  - d.) *[Hebrews 6:11]- And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end:*
  - e.) *[1 Peter 1:3,13]- Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ;*
  - f.) *[Psalm 131:3]- Let Israel hope in the LORD from henceforth and for ever.*
  - g.) *[Psalm 71:14]- But I will hope continually, and will yet praise thee more and more.*
  - h.) *[Proverbs 13:12]- Hope deferred maketh the heart sick: but when the desire cometh, it is a tree of life.*
  - i.) *[Job 8:13-14]- So are the paths of all that forget God; and the hypocrite's hope shall perish: Whose hope shall be cut off, and whose trust shall be a spider's web.*
  - j.) *[Job 11:20]- But the eyes of the wicked shall fail, and they shall not escape, and their hope shall be as the giving up of the ghost.*

- k.) *[Job 27:8]- For what is the hope of the hypocrite, though he hath gained, when God taketh away his soul?*
- l.) *[Proverbs 14:32]- The wicked is driven away in his wickedness: but the righteous hath hope in his death.*
- m.) *[Proverbs 11:7]- When a wicked man dieth, his expectation shall perish: and the hope of unjust men perisheth.*

g. Cautions concerning hope.

- 1.) All saints have not these things, which accompany salvation, in the same degree.
- 2.) Though you do not find everyone of those things in you who do accompany salvation, yet if you do find some of those things, ay, though but a few of those things, yes, though but one of those things which accompanies salvation, your estate is safe, and happiness will be your portion at last

VIII. The difference between a true and a counterfeit assurance; between sound assurance and presumption.

A. A sound and well-grounded assurance is attended with a deep admiration of God's transcendent love and favour to the soul, in the Lord Jesus.

- 1. *[Revelation 2:17]- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.*
- 2. *[Psalm 63:3]- Because thy lovingkindness is better than life, my lips shall praise thee.*
- 3. *[Exodus 15:2]- The LORD is my strength and song, and he is become my salvation: he is my God, and I will prepare him an habitation; my father's God, and I will exalt him.*
- 4. *[Ephesians 3:18-19]- May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height;*
- 5. *[1 Kings 10:8]- Happy are thy men, happy are these thy servants, which stand continually before thee, and that hear thy wisdom.*

B. A well-grounded assurance always begets in the soul an earnest and an impatient longing after a further, a clearer, and fuller enjoyment of God and Christ.

- 1. *[Psalm 63:1]- O God, thou art my God; early will I seek thee: my soul thirsteth for thee, my flesh longeth for thee in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is;*
- 2. *[Song of Solomon 8:14]- Make haste, my beloved, and be thou like to a roe or to a young hart upon the mountains of spices.*
- 3. *[Revelation 22:17]- And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.*
- 4. *[Ephesians 3:5]- Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit;*
- 5. *[Colossians 1:26]- Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:*

C. A well-grounded assurance is usually strongly assaulted by Satan on all sides.

- 1. *[Matthew 3:17]- And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.*
- 2. *[Matthew 4:1-2]- Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil. And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward an hungred.*
- 3. *[2 Corinthians 2:12]- Furthermore, when I came to Troas to preach Christ's gospel, and a door was opened unto me of the Lord,*
- 4. *[Revelation 12:9]- And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.*

5. *[Romans 8:36-39]- As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter. Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.*
  6. *[John 8:36]- If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.*
  7. *[Exodus 15:9]- The enemy said, I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil; my lust shall be satisfied upon them; I will draw my sword, my hand shall destroy them.*
- D. A well-grounded assurance makes a man as bold as a lion; it makes him valiant and gallant for Christ and his cause, in the face of all dangers and deaths.
1. *[Psalm 23:4,6]- Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me. Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life: and I will dwell in the house of the LORD for ever.*
  2. *[Heb 11:26-27]- Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward. By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.*
  3. *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
- E. A well-grounded assurance of a man's own eternal happiness and blessedness, will make him very studious and laborious to make others happy.
1. *[Psalm 66:16]- Come and hear, all ye that fear God, and I will declare what he hath done for my soul.*
  2. *[Ephesians 5:8]- For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light:*
  3. *[1 Corinthians 1:30]- But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:*
  4. *[Colossians 2:10]- And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power:*
  5. *[Isaiah 1:6]- From the sole of the foot even unto the head there is no soundness in it; but wounds, and bruises, and putrifying sores: they have not been closed, neither bound up, neither mollified with ointment.*
  6. *[Ephesians 5:26-27]- That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.*
  7. *[Song of Solomon 4:7]- Thou art all fair, my love; there is no spot in thee.*
  8. *[Song of Solomon 5:16]- His mouth is most sweet: yea, he is altogether lovely. This is my beloved, and this is my friend, O daughters of Jerusalem.*
  9. *[Song of Solomon 6:1]- Whither is thy beloved gone, O thou fairest among women? whither is thy beloved turned aside? that we may seek him with thee.*
  10. *[John 1:40-41]- One of the two which heard John speak, and followed him, was Andrew, Simon Peter's brother. He first findeth his own brother Simon, and saith unto him, We have found the Messiah, which is, being interpreted, the Christ.*
  11. *[Psalm 34:8]- O taste and see that the LORD is good: blessed is the man that trusteth in him.*
  12. *[Proverbs 3:17]- Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.*
  13. *[1 John 5:3]- For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous.*
  14. *[Matthew 11:30]- For my yoke is easy, and my burden is light.*
  15. *[Psalm 19:11]- Moreover by them is thy servant warned: and in keeping of them there is great reward.*

16. *[Psalm 84:10]- For a day in thy courts is better than a thousand. I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God, than to dwell in the tents of wickedness.*

F. A well-grounded assurance of God's love, and of a man's everlasting happiness and blessedness, will exceedingly arm and strengthen him against all wickedness and sin.

1. *[Ezekiel 16:60-63]- Nevertheless I will remember my covenant with thee in the days of thy youth, and I will establish unto thee an everlasting covenant. Then thou shalt remember thy ways, and be ashamed, when thou shalt receive thy sisters, thine elder and thy younger: and I will give them unto thee for daughters, but not by thy covenant. And I will establish my covenant with thee; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: That thou mayest remember, and be confounded, and never open thy mouth any more because of thy shame, when I am pacified toward thee for all that thou hast done, saith the Lord GOD.*
2. *[Luke 7:44,50]- And he turned to the woman, and said unto Simon, Seest thou this woman? I entered into thine house, thou gavest me no water for my feet: but she hath washed my feet with tears, and wiped them with the hairs of her head. And he said to the woman, Thy faith hath saved thee; go in peace.*
3. *[Romans 7:22-25]- For I delight in the law of God after the inward man: But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death? I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.*
4. *[Psalm 85:8]- I will hear what God the LORD will speak: for he will speak peace unto his people, and to his saints: but let them not turn again to folly.*
5. *[Song of Solomon 8:6-7]- Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love is strong as death; jealousy is cruel as the grave: the coals thereof are coals of fire, which hath a most vehement flame. Many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it: if a man would give all the substance of his house for love, it would utterly be contemned.*
6. *[Psalm 119:115]- Depart from me, ye evildoers: for I will keep the commandments of my God.*
7. *[1 John 3:2-3]- Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.*
8. *[1 Kings 11:9]- And the LORD was angry with Solomon, because his heart was turned from the LORD God of Israel, which had appeared unto him twice,*

G. A well-grounded assurance is always attended with three fair handmaids, or with three sweet companions.

1. The first is LOVE.
  - a. *[Luke 7:37-38]-And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that Jesus sat at meat in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment, And stood at his feet behind him weeping, and began to wash his feet with tears, and did wipe them with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet, and anointed them with the ointment.*
  - b. *[Psalm 18:2]- The LORD is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower.*
2. The second handmaid is HUMILITY.
  - a. *[Psalm 22:6]- But I am a worm, and no man; a reproach of men, and despised of the people.*
  - b. *[Numbers 12:3]- (Now the man Moses was very meek, above all the men which were upon the face of the earth.)*

- c. *[Ephesians 3:8]- Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;*
- 3. The third handmaid is holy JOY.
  - a. *[Luke 1:46-47]- And Mary said, My soul doth magnify the Lord, And my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.*
  - b. *[1 Peter 1:8-9]- Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory: Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls.*
- H. A well-grounded assurance sometimes springs from the testimony and witness of the Spirit of God.
  - 1. QUESTION 1: How shall we know the whispering of the Holy Spirit—from the hissing of the old serpent?
    - a. The Spirit of Christ does not witness by any outward voice, but by an inward, secret, glorious, and unspeakable way.
      - 1.) *[Luke 1:30-34]- And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end. Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?*
      - 2.) *[Matthew 9:2]- And, behold, they brought to him a man sick of the palsy, lying on a bed: and Jesus seeing their faith said unto the sick of the palsy; Son, be of good cheer; thy sins be forgiven thee.*
      - 3.) *[1 Kings 19:11-13]- And he said, Go forth, and stand upon the mount before the LORD. And, behold, the LORD passed by, and a great and strong wind rent the mountains, and brake in pieces the rocks before the LORD; but the LORD was not in the wind: and after the wind an earthquake; but the LORD was not in the earthquake: And after the earthquake a fire; but the LORD was not in the fire: and after the fire a still small voice. And it was so, when Elijah heard it, that he wrapped his face in his mantle, and went out, and stood in the entering in of the cave. And, behold, there came a voice unto him, and said, What doest thou here, Elijah?*
    - b. The testimony and witness of the Spirit of Christ, is only gained and enjoyed in holy and heavenly ways.
      - 1.) *[Acts 10:4]- And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said unto him, Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God.*
      - 2.) *[Daniel 9:20-22]- And whiles I was speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the LORD my God for the holy mountain of my God; Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding.*
      - 3.) *[Isaiah 64:5]- Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.*
      - 4.) *[Acts 10:44]- While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.*
    - c. The testimony and witness of the Spirit of Christ, is a clear, a full, a satisfying testimony and witness.

- 1.) *[John 14:17]- Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.*
  - 2.) *[1 John 3:24]- And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.*
  - 3.) *[Song of Solomon 2:16]- My beloved is mine, and I am his: he feedeth among the lilies.*
  - 4.) *[Song of Solomon 7:10]- I am my beloved's, and his desire is toward me.*
  - 5.) *[Psalm 16:5]- The LORD is the portion of mine inheritance and of my cup: thou maintainest my lot.*
  - 6.) *[Psalm 73:25]- Whom have I in heaven but thee? and there is none upon earth that I desire beside thee.*
  - 7.) *[2 Timothy 4:8]- Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
  - 8.) *[Song of Solomon 8:14]- Make haste, my beloved, and be thou like to a roe or to a young hart upon the mountains of spices.*
- d. Though the Spirit is a witnessing Spirit, yet he does not *always* witness to believers their adoption, their interest in Christ.
- 1.) *[Isaiah 50:10]- Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God.*
  - 2.) *[Psalm 51:10-12]- Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me. Cast me not away from thy presence; and take not thy holy spirit from me. Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation; and uphold me with thy free spirit.*
  - 3.) *[Job 23:8-9]- Behold, I go forward, but he is not there; and backward, but I cannot perceive him: On the left hand, where he doth work, but I cannot behold him: he hideth himself on the right hand, that I cannot see him:*
  - 4.) *[1 John 5:13]- These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.*
  - 5.) *[Micah 7:8-9]- Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the LORD shall be a light unto me. I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness.*
  - 6.) *[Isaiah 8:17]- And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.*
- e. The testimony and witness of the Spirit is a sure testimony, a sure witness.
- 1.) *[Titus 1:2]- In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;*
  - 2.) *[John 14:17]- Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.*
  - 3.) *[1 Corinthians 2:10]- But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.*
  - 4.) *[1 John 4:1-5]- Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world. Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world. Ye are of God, little children, and*



*have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world. They are of the world: therefore speak they of the world, and the world heareth them.*

- f. The testimony of God's Spirit is always accompanied with the testimony of our own.
  - 1.) *[2 Corinthians 1:12]- For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 8:16]- The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:*
  - 3.) *[1 John 3:21]- Beloved, if our heart condemn us not, then have we confidence toward God.*
  - 4.) *[1 John 5:8-12]- And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one. If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God which he hath testified of his Son. He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son. And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.*
- g. The witness of the Spirit is ever according to the word.
  - 1.) *[2 Peter 1:20-21]- Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.*
  - 2.) *[Deut 13:1-4]- If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and giveth thee a sign or a wonder, And the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them; Thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams: for the LORD your God proveth you, to know whether ye love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul. Ye shall walk after the LORD your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and ye shall serve him, and cleave unto him.*
  - 3.) *[Isaiah 8:20]- To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.*
  - 4.) *[John 16:13]- Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.*
- h. The witness of the Spirit is a holy witness, a holy testimony.
  - 1.) *[Psalm 85:8]- I will hear what God the LORD will speak: for he will speak peace unto his people, and to his saints: but let them not turn again to folly.*
  - 2.) *[1 Corinthians 15:31]- I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily.*
  - 3.) *[2 Corinthians 5:14]- For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:*
- i. Assurance is a jewel, a pearl of that price, that God only bestows it upon renewed hearts.
  - 1.) *[Revelation 2:17]- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.*
  - 2.) *[Ezekiel 36:25-27]- Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean: from all your filthiness, and from all your idols, will I cleanse you. A new heart also*

*will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.*

- 3.) *[Luke 10:20]- Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.*
- 4.) *[Luke 5:18-20]- And, behold, men brought in a bed a man which was taken with a palsy: and they sought means to bring him in, and to lay him before him. And when they could not find by what way they might bring him in because of the multitude, they went upon the housetop, and let him down through the tiling with his couch into the midst before Jesus. And when he saw their faith, he said unto him, Man, thy sins are forgiven thee.*
- 5.) *[Isaiah 56:5]- Even unto them will I give in mine house and within my walls a place and a name better than of sons and of daughters: I will give them an everlasting name, that shall not be cut off.*
- 6.) *[2 Corinthians 5:17]- Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.*
- 7.) *[Romans 8:15]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.*
- 8.) *[Ephesians 2:13-20]- But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ. For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us; Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace; And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby: And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh. For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God; And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;*
- 9.) *[Ephesians 1:13]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,*
- 10.) *[Song of Solomon 8:6]- Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love is strong as death; jealousy is cruel as the grave: the coals thereof are coals of fire, which hath a most vehement flame.*
- 11.) *[Psalm 45:7]- Thou lovest righteousness, and hatest wickedness: therefore God, thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.*

IX. Several special questions about assurance.

- A. We have, after much praying, weeping, and waiting, gained this pearl of price, assurance; but oh, how shall we do to strengthen it, how shall we do to keep it?
  1. Keep close to soul-strengthening ways, be serious and sincere, be diligent and constant in the use of those means and ways wherein you first gained assurance, as prayer; the word, breaking of bread, communion of saints, etc.
    - a. *“A serious and cordial use of holy and heavenly means is blessed, not only with a preservation of assurance—but likewise with an addition and increase of it.”*
  2. Dwell much upon your spiritual and eternal privileges, namely, your adoption, justification, reconciliation, glorification, etc.
    - a. *[1 Peter 2:9]- But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;*

- b. *[Job 30:31]- My harp also is turned to mourning, and my organ into the voice of them that weep.*
3. Look that your hearts run more out to *Christ*—than to *assurance*; more to the *sun* than to the *beams*; more to the *fountain* than to the *stream*; more to the *root* than to the *branch*; more to the *cause* than to the *effect*.
  - a. *[Song of Solomon 1:13]- A bundle of myrrh is my well-beloved unto me; he shall lie all night betwixt my breasts.*
  - b. *[Song of Solomon 5:16]- His mouth is most sweet: yea, he is altogether lovely. This is my beloved, and this is my friend, O daughters of Jerusalem.*
  - c. *[Proverbs 3:15]- She is more precious than rubies: and all the things thou canst desire are not to be compared unto her.*
4. Look that your hearts are more taken up with *Christ*—than with your *GRACES*.
  - a. *“Though grace is a glorious creature, yet it is but a creature; therefore let grace have your eye—but be sure that Christ has your heart! Christ must have your heart. Christ will not allow your very graces to be rivals with him.”*
  - b. *“He who minds his graces more than Christ, or that sets his graces upon the throne with Christ—will quickly find what it is to lose the face and favour of Christ.”*
  - c. *“Your graces are but Christ's servants and handmaids; you may look upon them—but you must not love them. It is a reproach to Christ, that those who have married the master, should at the same time love the servants!”*
  - d. *[John 19:23]- Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took his garments, and made four parts, to every soldier a part; and also his coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout.*
  - e. *[Isaiah 42:8]- I am the LORD: that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.*
5. Labour to improve it to the strengthening of you against temptations, to the fencing of you against corruptions, to the raising of your resolutions, to the inflaming of your affections, to the bettering of your lives.
  - a. *[Matthew 25:28]- Take therefore the talent from him, and give it unto him which hath ten talents.*
  - b. *“Dionysius, being advised that one of his subjects had hidden a great amount of money, commands him upon pain of death to bring it to him, which he did—but not all. He then went and dwelt in another country, where he took up some useful employment and profitably used the remainder of his money. When Dionysius heard of this, he sent back the money which he had taken from him, saying, 'Now you know how to use riches, take back what I took from you.'”*
6. Walk humbly with your God.
  - a. *[Isaiah 57:15]- For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.*
  - b. It includes God's superintending the humble.
  - c. It includes God's assisting and strengthening of the humble.
  - d. It includes God's protection; I will dwell with the humble, that is, I will protect him and secure him.
    - 1.) *[Job 22:29]- When men are cast down, then thou shalt say, There is lifting up; and he shall save the humble person.*
  - e. It includes God's sympathizing with the humble.
  - f. It includes God's applying all suitable good to the humble.

- 1.) *[Isaiah 57:18]- I have seen his ways, and will heal him: I will lead him also, and restore comforts unto him and to his mourners.*
  - 2.) *[Isaiah 63:9]- In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old.*
- g. It includes God's ruling and overruling the heart and the affections of the humble.
  - h. It includes God's teaching and instructing of the humble.
  - i. It includes and takes in a clearer, a fuller, and a larger manifestation and communication of God to humble souls/
    - 1.) *[Psalm 10:17]- LORD, thou hast heard the desire of the humble: thou wilt prepare their heart, thou wilt cause thine ear to hear:*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 25:9]- The meek will he guide in judgment: and the meek will he teach his way.*
7. Take heed and watch against those very particular sins by which other saints have lost their assurance.
    - a. *[Psalm 30:6-7]- And in my prosperity I said, I shall never be moved. LORD, by thy favour thou hast made my mountain to stand strong: thou didst hide thy face, and I was troubled.*
    - b. *[Song of Solomon 5:2-3,6]- I sleep, but my heart waketh: it is the voice of my beloved that knocketh, saying, Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night. I have put off my coat; how shall I put it on? I have washed my feet; how shall I defile them? I opened to my beloved; but my beloved had withdrawn himself, and was gone: my soul failed when he spake: I sought him, but I could not find him; I called him, but he gave me no answer.*
    - c. *[Isaiah 57:17]- For the iniquity of his covetousness was I wroth, and smote him: I hid me, and was wroth, and he went on frowardly in the way of his heart.*
  8. Frequently and seriously consider of the great difficulty of recovering assurance when it is lost.
    - a. *"A man may easier make a seeing eye blind—than a blind to see; a man may soon put an instrument out of tune—but not soon put it in again; a man is easily borne down the stream—but cannot swim so easily up the stream,"*
  9. Consider solemnly the sad and woeful evils and hindrances which will certainly follow upon the loss of your assurance.
    - a. None of the precious things of Christ will be so sweet to you—as formerly they have been.
    - b. You will neither be so fervent in duty, nor so frequent in duty, nor so abundant in duty, nor so spiritual in duty, nor so lively in duty, nor so cheerful in duty—as formerly you have been.
    - c. Afflictions will sooner sink you, temptations will sooner overcome you, oppositions will sooner discourage you.
    - d. Your mercies will be bitter, your life a burden, and death a terror to you; you will be weary of living, and yet afraid of dying, etc.
- B. How may such sad souls be supported and kept from fainting, sinking, and languishing under the loss of assurance?
1. By considering, that though they have lost their assurance, yet they have not lost their sonship; for once sons and always sons.
    - a. *[Romans 8:15-17]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.*

- b. *[Psalm 89:30-32,34]- If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments; If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments; Then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes. My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips.*
  - c. *[John 13:5]- After that he poureth water into a bason, and began to wash the disciples' feet, and to wipe them with the towel wherewith he was girded.*
  - d. *[Jeremiah 31:3]- The LORD hath appeared of old unto me, saying, Yea, I have loved thee with an everlasting love: therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn thee.*
  - e. *[2 Samuel 23:5]- Although my house be not so with God; yet he hath made with me an everlasting covenant, ordered in all things, and sure: for this is all my salvation, and all my desire, although he make it not to grow.*
2. Consider, that though your comfort, joy, and peace, does depend much upon your assurance; yet your eternal happiness and blessedness does not depend upon your assurance.
- a. *[Psalm 144:15]- Happy is that people, that is in such a case: yea, happy is that people, whose God is the LORD.*
  - b. *[Psalm 146:5]- Happy is he that hath the God of Jacob for his help, whose hope is in the LORD his God:*
  - c. *[Proverbs 16:20]- He that handleth a matter wisely shall find good: and whoso trusteth in the LORD, happy is he.*
  - d. *[Proverbs 28:14]- Happy is the man that feareth alway: but he that hardeneth his heart shall fall into mischief.*
  - e. Happiness occurs when;
    - 1.) It must be a suitable good to our natures;
    - 2.) It must be an excellent good—a good which has worth and excellency in it;
    - 3.) It must be a sufficient good; a few shavings of gold will not make a man rich, etc.;
    - 4.) It must be a permanent good. It is permanency, which sets the greatest price, and has the greatest influence, into our happiness and felicity.
3. Consider that though their loss be the greatest and saddest loss that could befall them, yet it is a recoverable loss, it is a loss that may be recovered.
- a. *[Psalm 71:20-21]- Thou, which hast shewed me great and sore troubles, shalt quicken me again, and shalt bring me up again from the depths of the earth.*
  - b. *[Psalm 42:5,7-8]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted in me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him for the help of his countenance. Deep calleth unto deep at the noise of thy waterspouts: all thy waves and thy billows are gone over me. Yet the LORD will command his lovingkindness in the day time, and in the night his song shall be with me, and my prayer unto the God of my life.*
  - c. *[Isaiah 54:7-8]- For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee. In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the LORD thy Redeemer.*
  - d. *[Micah 7:18-19]- Who is a God like unto thee, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? he retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth in mercy. He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.*
  - e. *[Song of Solomon 3:4]- It was but a little that I passed from them, but I found him whom my soul loveth: I held him, and would not let him go, until I had brought him into my mother's house, and into the chamber of her that conceived me.*
  - f. *[Psalm 84:11]- For the LORD God is a sun and shield: the LORD will give grace and glory: no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly.*
4. Consider that your loss is no greater, nor no sadder, than what the noblest and the choicest saints have sustained.

- a. *[Psalm 30:6-7]- And in my prosperity I said, I shall never be moved. LORD, by thy favour thou hast made my mountain to stand strong: thou didst hide thy face, and I was troubled.*
  - b. *[Psalm 51:12]- Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation; and uphold me with thy free spirit.*
  - c. *[Job 23:8-9]- Behold, I go forward, but he is not there; and backward, but I cannot perceive him: On the left hand, where he doth work, but I cannot behold him: he hideth himself on the right hand, that I cannot see him:*
  - d. *[Isaiah 8:17]- And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.*
5. Though they have lost assurance, yet they have not lost the blessed breathings and sweet influences of the Spirit upon them.
- a. *[Song of Solomon 3:5]- I charge you, O ye daughters of Jerusalem, by the roes, and by the hinds of the field, that ye stir not up, nor awake my love, till he please.*
  - b. *[Micah 7:7-9]- Therefore I will look unto the LORD; I will wait for the God of my salvation: my God will hear me. Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the LORD shall be a light unto me. I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness.*
  - c. *[Isaiah 8:17]- And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.*
  - d. *[Isaiah 50:10]- Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God.*
  - e. *[Psalm 42:5,7-8,11]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted in me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him for the help of his countenance. Deep calleth unto deep at the noise of thy waterspouts: all thy waves and thy billows are gone over me. Yet the LORD will command his lovingkindness in the day time, and in the night his song shall be with me, and my prayer unto the God of my life. Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted within me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him, who is the health of my countenance, and my God.*
6. Consider, that it will be but as a day—but as a short day, before the loss of your assurance shall be made up with a clearer, full, perfect, and complete enjoyment of God.
- a. *[Isaiah 57:18-20]- I have seen his ways, and will heal him: I will lead him also, and restore comforts unto him and to his mourners. I create the fruit of the lips; Peace, peace to him that is far off, and to him that is near, saith the LORD; and I will heal him. But the wicked are like the troubled sea, when it cannot rest, whose waters cast up mire and dirt.*
  - b. *[Psalm 71:20-21]- Thou, which hast shewed me great and sore troubles, shalt quicken me again, and shalt bring me up again from the depths of the earth. Thou shalt increase my greatness, and comfort me on every side.*
  - c. *[Psalm 126:5]- They that sow in tears shall reap in joy.*
  - d. *[Isaiah 35:10]- And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.*
- C. What MEANS must souls use to recover assurance when it is lost?
1. You must labour diligently to find out that sin, that Achan, which has robbed you of your wedge of gold, of your assurance.
    - a. *“Surely it is not for mere infirmities—but enormities, that God has put out your candle, and caused your sun to set at noon. Surely you have been feeding, not tasting, of forbidden*

*fruit. So God has stripped you of your robes, and taken the crown from off your head, and turned you out of paradise.”*

2. Weep much, mourn much, over the Achan, over those wicked messes which have turned your day into night, your rejoicing into sighing.
  - a. *[Revelation 2:4-5]- Nevertheless I have somewhat against thee, because thou hast left thy first love. Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent.*
  - b. *[Isaiah 57:15]- For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.*
  - c. *[Jeremiah 31:18-20]- I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself thus; Thou hast chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, and I shall be turned; for thou art the LORD my God. Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I smote upon my thigh: I was ashamed, yea, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth. Is Ephraim my dear son? is he a pleasant child? For since I spake against him, I do earnestly remember him still: therefore my bowels are troubled for him; I will surely have mercy upon him, saith the LORD.*
  - d. *[Psalm 126:5]- They that sow in tears shall reap in joy.*
  - e. *[2 Kings 20:5]- Turn again, and tell Hezekiah the captain of my people, Thus saith the LORD, the God of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will heal thee: on the third day thou shalt go up unto the house of the LORD.*
  - f. *[Psalm 39:12]- Hear my prayer, O LORD, and give ear unto my cry; hold not thy peace at my tears: for I am a stranger with thee, and a sojourner, as all my fathers were.*
  - g. *[Job 16:20]- My friends scorn me: but mine eye poureth out tears unto God.*
  - h. *[Mark 9:24-25]- And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief. When Jesus saw that the people came running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, Thou dumb and deaf spirit, I charge thee, come out of him, and enter no more into him.*
3. Do not sit down discouraged—but be up and doing!
  - a. *[Revelation 2:4-5]- Nevertheless I have somewhat against thee, because thou hast left thy first love. Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent.*
  - b. *[Psalm 22:26]- The meek shall eat and be satisfied: they shall praise the LORD that seek him: your heart shall live for ever.*
4. Wait patiently upon the Lord.
  - a. *[Psalm 40:1-3]- I waited patiently for the LORD; and he inclined unto me, and heard my cry. He brought me up also out of an horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a rock, and established my goings. And he hath put a new song in my mouth, even praise unto our God: many shall see it, and fear, and shall trust in the LORD.*
  - b. *[Isaiah 57:16-19]- For I will not contend for ever, neither will I be always wroth: for the spirit should fail before me, and the souls which I have made. For the iniquity of his covetousness was I wroth, and smote him: I hid me, and was wroth, and he went on frowardly in the way of his heart. I have seen his ways, and will heal him: I will lead him also, and restore comforts unto him and to his mourners. I create the fruit of the lips; Peace, peace to him that is far off, and to him that is near, saith the LORD; and I will heal him.*

- c. *[Isaiah 30:18]- And therefore will the LORD wait, that he may be gracious unto you, and therefore will he be exalted, that he may have mercy upon you: for the LORD is a God of judgment: blessed are all they that wait for him.*
  - d. *[Isaiah 64:4]- For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him.*
  - e. *[Isaiah 49:23]- And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.*
  - f. *[John 14:18]- I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you.*
  - g. *[Hebrews 10:36-37]-For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise. For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.*
5. Take heed of refusing comforts when God brings them to your door.
- a. *[Psalm 77:2]- In the day of my trouble I sought the Lord: my sore ran in the night, and ceased not: my soul refused to be comforted.*
  - b. *“Ambrose says, 'If I would offer you gold today, you would not say, 'I will come and get it tomorrow.' And will you lightly put God off when he offers peace and comfort to your soul?'"*

#### D. Uses.

- 1. You who have assurance, be thankful for it.
  - a. *[James 1:17]- Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning.*
- 2. Do not envy the outward felicity and happiness of the men of the world,
  - a. *[Psalm 37:17-18]- For the arms of the wicked shall be broken: but the LORD upholdeth the righteous. The LORD knoweth the days of the upright: and their inheritance shall be for ever.*
  - b. *[Proverbs 23:17]- Let not thine heart envy sinners: but be thou in the fear of the LORD all the day long.*
  - c. *“Ah, Christians! when the men of the world shall cry out, 'Oh, my riches! oh, my honours! oh, my preferments!' You may well cry out, 'Oh, assurance, assurance, assurance!'"*
- 3. Give no way to slavish fears.
  - a. *“God will not deny him a crust—to whom he has given a Christ; he will not deny him a crumb—upon whom he has bestowed a crown; he will not deny him a less mercy—upon whom he has bestowed assurance, which is the prince of mercies. Fear not death, for why should you fear death, who have assurance of eternal life?"*
- 4. Question His love no more.
  - a. *[Psalm 89:30-35]- If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments; If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments; Then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes. Nevertheless my lovingkindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail. My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips. Once have I sworn by my holiness that I will not lie unto David.*
  - b. *[Jeremiah 31:3]- The LORD hath appeared of old unto me, saying, Yea, I have loved thee with an everlasting love: therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn thee.*
  - c. *[Ecclesiastes 9:8]- Let thy garments be always white; and let thy head lack no ointment.*



5. Live holily, live angelically, keep your garments pure and white, walk with an even foot, be shining lights,
- a. *[Revelation 3:4]- Thou hast a few names even in Sardis which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with me in white: for they are worthy.*
  - b. *[Matthew 5:16]- Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.*
  - c. *[John 14:21-23]- He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. Judas saith unto him, not Iscariot, Lord, how is it that thou wilt manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world? Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.*
  - d. *[John 1:14]- And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.*